

A Translation of the Nepalese Text of the *Suśrutasamhitā*

Jason Birch Dominik Wujastyk Andrey Klebanov
Lisa A. Brooks Paras Mehta Madhusudan Rimal
Deepro Chakraborty Harshal Bhatt Jane Allred
et alii

Draft of 24th November 2023
© The Authors

Contents

Sūtrasthāna	7
Sūtrasthāna 1: The Origin of Medical Knowledge	9
Literature	9
Translation	9
Sūtrasthāna 2: The Initiation of a Student	17
Literature	17
Translation	17
Sūtrasthāna 3: The Table of Contents	19
Literature	19
Translation	19
Sūtrasthāna 13: On Leeches	21
Literature	21
Translation	21
Sūtrasthāna 14: On Blood	29
Previous scholarship	29
Translation	29
Sūtrasthāna 16: Repairing Pierced Ears	37
Previous literature	37
Translation	37
Sūtrasthāna 28: Unfavourable Prognosis in Patients with Sores	47
Literature	47
Translation	47

Nidānasthāna	49
Nidānasthāna 1: The Diagnosis of Diseases Caused by Wind	51
Literature	51
Translation	51
 Śārīrasthāna	 59
Śārīrasthāna 2: On Semen and Menstrual Fluid	61
Literature	61
Conceptual background	61
Translation	61
JG translation	62
 Cikitsāsthāna	 65
Cikitsāsthāna 4: On the Treatment of Wind Diseases	67
Literature	67
Translation	67
 Cikitsāsthāna 5: On the Treatment of Serious Wind Diseases	 73
Literature	73
Translation	73
 Cikitsāsthāna 15: On Difficult Delivery	 85
Literature	85
Translation	85
 Kalpasthāna	 89
Kalpasthāna 1: Protecting the King from Poison	91
Introduction	91
Literature	92
Manuscript notes	92
Translation	93
[Threats to the king]	93

Kalpasthāna 2: Poisonous Plants	103
Introduction	103
Literature	104
Translation	104
The effects of poisons	108
Slow-acting poison	111
The invincible ghee	116
Curing the ‘slow-acting’ poison	116
Kalpasthāna 3: Poisonous Insects and Animals	117
Literature	117
Translation	117
The origin of poison	121
Patients beyond help	123
Kalpasthāna 4: Snakes and Invenomation	125
Introduction	125
Literature	125
Translation	126
[Types of snake]	129
[Symptoms of snakebite]	134
Uttaratantra	139
Uttaratantra 17: Preventing Diseases of the Pupil	141
Literature	141
Translation	141
[Complications]	150
[Characteristics of the probe]	151
[Complications]	151
Uttaratantra 38: Diseases of the Female Reproductive System	155
Introduction	155
Literature	155
Placement of the Chapter	155
Parallels	157
Philological notes	158

Metrical alterations	158
The original opening verses	158
Translation	160
Uttaratantra 39: On Fevers and their Management [draft]	143
Literature	143
Remarks on the Nepalese version	143
Translation	143
Uttaratantra 65: Rules of Interpretation	157
Literature	157
Early Sources	157
Terminology	163
Characteristics of the Manuscript Transmission	163
Translation	163
Index of Manuscripts	169
Materia Medica	171
Glossary	183

Sūtrasthāna

Sūtrasthāna 1: The Origin of Medical Knowledge

Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.¹

Translation

- 1 Now I shall narrate the chapter on the origin of this knowledge.²
- 2 Now, as is well-known, Aupadhenava, Vaitaraṇa, Aurabhra, Puṣkalāvata, Karavīra, Gopurarakṣita, **Bhoja**, Suśruta and others addressed Lord Divodāsa, king of Kāśi, the best of the immortals, who was in his ashram surrounded by an entourage of sages.³

¹ [HIML](#): IA, 203–204.

² Ḍalhaṇa understood the word “knowledge (*veda*)” as specifically “medical knowledge.” He said that the word “longevity” (*āyur*) had been elided. After this opening statement, later manuscripts and commentaries include the attribution, “as the venerable Dhanvantari stated.” The absence of this statement in the early Nepalese manuscripts is highly significant because it removes the outer narrative frame of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* (**wuja-2013kleb-2021brai-2019birc-2021**). On the figure of Dhanvantari in medical literature, see [HIML](#): IA 358–361.

³ On these persons, see [HIML](#): IA 361–363, 369 ff. The authority Bhoja does not appear in the list as published in the vulgate edition (**susr-trikamj12**), and was not included in [HIML](#) amongst “authorities mentioned in the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*.” Meulenbeld gathered textual evidence about Bhoja at [HIML](#): IA 690–691. **kleb-2021a** has discussed these authors in the context of an anonymous commentary on the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* that cites them.

- 3 “O Lord, distress arose in our minds after witnessing people thrashing about with cries, assailed by different kinds of pain and injury (*vedanāb-highāta*), feeling helpless in spite of having friends, because of diseases arising from the body, the mind and external sources.
- 4 “To quell the illnesses of those who seek happiness and for our own purpose of prolonging life, we desire the science of life (*āyurveda*) that is being taught. Welfare, both in this world and in the next, depends upon it. Therefore, we have come to the Lord in pupillage.”
- 5 The Lord said to them:
“Welcome to you! My children, all of you are beyond reproach and worthy to be taught.
- 6 “As is well known, Ayurveda is the name of what is said to be the subsidiary part of the Atharvaveda. Before creating people, Svayambhū composed it in hundreds of thousands of verses and a thousand chapters and, after observing the short lifespan and low intelligence of people, he presented it again in eight parts.⁴
- 7 “Surgery, treatment of body parts above the clavicle, general medicine, knowledge of spirits, care of children, and the disciplines of antidotes, rejuvenation and aphrodisiacs.
- 8 “Now, a collection of the characteristics of each component of Āyurveda.
- 9 “Among them, [the component] called surgery has the goal of extracting various grasses, wood, stone, dust, iron (?), soil, bone, hair, nails, discharge of pus, malignant wounds and foreign bodies inside the womb, and of determining the application of surgical instruments, knives, caustics and fire by means of sixty definitions.
- 10 “[The component] named the doctrine of treating body parts above the clavicles has the aim of curing diseases situated above clavicles that is, diseases located in ears, eyes, mouth, nose and so on.
- 11 “[The component] called general medicine has the goal of curing illnesses established in the whole body and [diseases] such as fever, tumour, swelling, hemorrhagic disorders, insanity, epilepsy, urinary diseases, diarrhoea and the like.
- 12 “[The component] called knowledge of spirits is for appeasing demons by pacification rites and making food offerings for those whose minds

4 Svayambhū is another name for Brahmā, the creator.

- have been possessed by gods, their enemies,⁵ Gandharvas, Yakṣas, demons, deceased ancestors, Piśācas, Vināyakas,⁶ Nāgas and evil spirits that possess children.
- 13 “[The component] called care of children is for bearing children and purifying defects in a wet-nurse’s milk, and curing diseases that have arisen from bad breast milk and demons.
- 14 “[The component] called the discipline of toxicology is for [knowing] the signs of poison from snake and insect bites and for neutralising various combinations of poisons.⁷
- 15 “[The component] called the discipline of rejuvenation is maintaining youth, bringing about a long life and mental vigour and for curing diseases.
- 16 “[The component] called the discipline of aphrodisiacs brings about the increase, purity, accumulation and production of semen for those whose semen is minimal, bad, depleted, and dry [respectively] and for inducing an erection.
- 17 “Thus, this Āyurveda is taught with eight components.”
“Among these [components], tell us which is for whom.”
- 18 They said, “After you have conveyed the knowledge of surgery, teach us everything.”
- 19 He said, “So be it.”
- 20 They then said, “Having considered the view of all of us, when we are unanimous, Suśruta will question you. We too will learn what is being taught to him.”
- 21 He said, “So be it.”
- 22 “Now, as is well-known, the aim of Āyurveda is eliminating the disease of one who have been assailed by disease and protecting the healthy; Āyurveda is [that knowledge] in which they find a long life, or that by which long life is known. Learn its best component (i.e., surgery),

5 Dānavas. The insertion marks (*kākapadas*) below the text at this point appears to be by the original scribe.

6 The vulgate doesn’t have *vināyakas* but does add *asuras*, probably under the influence of Ḍaḷhaṇa. Cite Paul Courtright, Ganesha book.

7 The scribal insertion marks (crosses) above the line at this point in MS K appear to be in a later hand and their referent is lost in the damaged part of the folio. Although MSS MS Kathmandu NAK 1-1079 and MS Kathmandu NAK 5-333 include spiders (*lūtā*) and creepy-crawlies (*sarīṣṛpa*) in the list, it does seem that MS K had a shorter list, and the vulgate edition adds rodents (*mūṣika*).

which is being taught in accordance with tradition, perception, inference and analogy.

- 23 "For this component is first, the most important, because it is referred to first; it cures wounds and joins together the most important thing, Yajña's head. For, just as it has been said of old, 'the head that had been cut off by Rudra was joined again by the two Aśvins.'
- 24 "And also, of the eight disciplines of Āyurveda, [surgery] alone is the best because of the quick action of its procedures (*kriyā*), its application of blunt instruments, knives, caustics and fire, and it is common to all disciplines.
- 25 "Therefore, [surgery] is eternal, meritorious, leads to heaven, brings renown, bestows a long life, and affords a livelihood.
- 26 "Brahmā said this, 'Prajāpati learned it. From him, the Aśvins. From the Aśvins, Indra. From Indra, I. In this world, I will transmit to those who desire it for the benefit of people.'
- [There a verse about this].⁸
- 27 *For, I (i.e., Brahmā) am Dhanvantari, the first god, the remover of old age, pain and death of mortals.
Having understood surgery, the best of the great knowledge systems,
I arrived on earth again to teach it here.*⁹
- 28 In this context, as far as this discipline is concerned, a human being (*puruṣa*) is called an amalgam of the five elements and the embodied soul. This is where procedures (*kriyā*) apply. This is the locus.

Why?

Because of the duality of the world, the world is twofold: the stationary and the moving. Its nature (*ātmaka*) is twofold, depending on the preponderance of Agni and Soma.¹⁰ Alternatively, it can be considered as being fivefold. The multitude of beings in it are fourfold: they are termed "sweat-born, stone-born, caul-born and egg-born".¹¹ Where they are concerned, the human being is the main thing; others are his

8 This is an expansion of the scribe's abbreviation *bha* for *bhavati cātra ślokaḥ* "There is a verse about this" (sometimes plural).

9 Note that this verse about the origin of surgery is the first place that the name 'Dhanvantari' is introduced in the Nepalese version of the work. Dhanvantari is here identified with Brahmā, the creator of the world.

10 wuja-2004.

11 This fourfold classification of beings is paralleled with closely-related vocabulary in *Bhelasamhitā* 4.4.4 (*kris-2000mook-1921*).

support. Therefore, the human being (*puruṣa*) is the locus.

- 29 Diseases are said to be the conjunction of the person and suffering (*duḥkha*). There are four of them: invasive, bodily, mental and inherent. The invasive ones are caused by an injury. The bodily ones are based on food, caused by irregularities (*vaiṣamya*) in wind, bile, phlegm and blood.¹²

The mental (*mānasa*) ones, caused by desire (*icchā*) and hatred (*dveṣa*), include: anger (*krodha*), grief (*āśoka*), misery (*dainya*), overexcitement (*harṣa*), lust (*kāma*), depression (*viṣāda*), envy (*īrṣyā*), jealousy (*asūyā*), malice (*mātsarya*), and greed (*lobha*).

The inherent (*svābhāvika*) ones are hunger, thirst, old age, death, sleep and those of the temperament (*prakṛti*).

These too are located (*adhiṣṭhāna*) in the mind and body.

Scarification (*lekhaṇa*), nourishment (*bṛṇhaṇa*), purification (*saṃśodhana*), pacification (*saṃśamana*), diet (*āhāra*) and regimen (*ācāra*), properly employed, bring about their cure.

- 30 Furthermore, food is the root (*mūla*) of living beings as well as of strength (*bala*), complexion (*varṇa*) and vital energy (*ojas*). It depends on (*āyatta*) the six flavours (*rasa*). Flavours, furthermore, have substances as their substrate (*āśrayin*). And substances are remedies (*oṣadhī*).¹³ There are two types: stationary (*sthāvara*) and moving (*jaṅgama*).

- 31 Of these, there are four types of stationary ones: fruit trees (*vanaspati*), flowering trees (*vṛkṣa*), herbs (*oṣadhi*) and shrubs (*vīrudh*).¹⁴ Amongst these, the “fruit trees” have fruit but no flowers.¹⁵ The “flowering trees” have flowers and fruit. The “herbs” die when the fruit is ripe. “Shrubs” put out shoots.

¹² Note that four humoral substances are assumed here.

¹³ Pāṇini 6.3.132 provides that the final vowel of the noun *oṣadhi* may be lengthened ($\rightarrow oṣadhī$) under certain conditions. These conditions require that the word be used in a Vedic mantra and not in the nominative. Neither condition is met in this passage, yet the author uses the form *oṣadhī*. This form is in fact not uncommon in medical literature as well as in epics, purāṇas, smṛtis, and other parts of Sanskrit literature.

¹⁴ Ca.sū.1.71–72 also describes these four types of medicinal plant in similar terms but with slightly differing names: *oṣadhi* is a plant that ends after fruiting, *vīrudh* is a plant that branches out, *vanaspati* is a tree with fruit, and *vānaspatya* is a tree with fruit and flowers.

¹⁵ The MSS agree in reading *phalavantyaḥ* “having flowers” which is grammatically non-standard. This form is also found in the *Viṣṇudharmottarapurāṇa* (1.92.27, **sarm-1912**).

- 32 As is well known, moving remedies are also of four types: those born in in a caul (*jarāyuja*), those born from eggs (*aṇḍaja*), those born of sweat (*sveda*), and shoots (*udbhid*). Amongst these, those born in a caul include animals (*paśu*), humans, and wild animals (*vyāla*). Birds, creepy-crawlies (*sarīṣpa*) and snakes are “born of eggs.” Worms (*kṛmi*), small insects (*kunta*) and ants (*pipīlika*) and others are born of sweat.¹⁶ Shoots include red velvet mites (*indragopa*) and frogs (*maṇḍūka*).¹⁷
- 33 In this context, among the stationary remedies, skin (*tvak*), leaves (*patra*), flowers (*puṣpa*), fruits (*phala*), roots (*mūla*), bulbs (*kanda*), sap (*kṣīra*), resin (*niryāsa*), essence (*sāra*), oil (*sneha*), and juice extract (*svarasa*)¹⁸ are useful; among the moving remedies pelt (*carman*), hair, nails, and blood (*rudhira*) and so forth.
- 34 And earth products (*pārthiva*) include gold and silver.¹⁹
- 35 The items created by time (*kālakṛta*) are clusters (*samplava*) as far as wind and no wind (*nivāta*), heat and shade, darkness and light and the cold, hot and rainy seasons (*varṣā*) are concerned. The divisions of time are the blink of the eye (*nimeṣa*), a trice (*kāṣṭhā*), minutes (*kalā*), three-quarters of an hour (*muhūrta*), a day and night (*ahorātra*), a fortnight (*pakṣa*), a month (*māsa*), a season (*ṛtu*), a half-year (*ayana*), a year (*saṃvatsara*), and yuga (*yuga*).²⁰
- 36 These naturally cause accumulation (*sañcaya*), irritation (*prakopa*), pacification (*upaśama*) and alleviation (*pratīkāra*) of the humours (*doṣa*). And they have practical purposes (*prayojanavat*).
- [There are verses about this:]²¹
- 37 *This fourfold category is taught by physicians as a cause for the agitation and quelling of bodily diseases.*²²

16 The word *kunta*, though marked as “lexical” in most dictionaries, is in fact found in literature, commonly as a compound with *pipīlika*; the compound sometimes seems to be understood a type of ant (*tatpuruṣa* compound) rather than as a pair of insects (*dvandva* compound).

17 On *indragopa*, see **lien-1978**.

18 On juice extract (*svarasa*) see CS 1.1.73, 1.4.7; Ḍalhaṇa on 4.10.12 (**vulgate**).

19 The flow of concepts in the treatise seems to be interrupted here.

20 These units are presented at 1.6.5 (**vulgate**) and discussed by **haya-2017**.

21 See footnote 8.

22 On the topic of the “group of four,” the commentator Ḍalhaṇa considers them to be “food, behaviour, earthen products and items created by time.” He refers to the author of the lost commentary entitled *Pañjikā*, and to Jejjāta (**HIML**: IA, 372–3, 192). In his view, these early commentators do not agree that the fourfold grouping

- 38 *There are two kinds of invasive diseases. Some certainly²³ affect (ni√ pat) the mind, others the body. Their treatment (kriyā) is of two kinds too.*
- 39 *For those that affect the body there is physical (śārīravād) therapy, whereas for those that affect the mind there is the collection (varga) of desirable sensory experiences like sound that bring comfort (sukha).*
- 40 *Along these lines (evam), this brief explanation of the four factors (catuṣṭaya) is given:*
- human being (*puruṣa*),
 - disease (*vyādhi*),
 - remedies (*oṣadhi*),
 - the time for therapies (*kriyākāla*).

In this context,

- from the mention of the word “human,” the collection of substances that arise from it, such as the elements, and the particulars (*vikalpa*) of its major and minor parts (*aṅga*) such as skin (*tvak*), flesh (*māṃsa*), ducts (*sirā*), sinews (*snāyu*), bones (*asthi*) and joints (*sandhi*) are meant.
- From the mention of “diseases,” all diseases caused by wind, bile, phlegm, congested humours (*sannipāta*), external factors (*āgantū*) and inherent factors (*svabhāva*) are intended (*vyākhyāta*).
- From the mention of “remedies,” there is the teaching of substances, tastes, potencies, post-digestive tastes.
- From the mention of “procedures (*kriyā*),” therapies (*karman*) such as oiling and excision (*chedya*) are taught.
- From the mention of the word “time,” every single teaching about the times for procedures is meant.

[There is a verse about this:]²⁴

- 41 *This seed of medicine has been declared in brief. Its explanation will be given in one hundred and twenty chapters.²⁵*

(*caturvarga*) refers to the quartet of stationary (*sthāvara*), moving (*jaṅgama*), earthen products (*pārthiva*) and items created by time (*kālakṛta*) (**vulgate**).

23 The text uses an archaic interjection here, *ha*.

24 See footnote 8.

25 This is the number of chapters in the first five sections of the work, namely the *Sūtra*-,

- 42 There are one hundred and twenty chapters in five sections (*adhyāya*).²⁶
In that regard, having divided them, according to their subject matter,
into the Ślokaśthāna, the Nidāna, the Śārīra, the Cikitsita and the Kalpa,
we shall mention this in the Uttaratāntra.²⁷
- [There is a verse about this:]²⁸
- 43 *Someone who reads this eternal proclamation of the King of Kāśī,
that was declared by Svayambhu, will have good karma on earth,
will be respected by kings and upon death will achieve the world of
Śakra.*

Nidāna-, *Śārīra-*, *Cikitsā-* and *Kalpa-sthānas*. These have 46, 16, 10, 40 and 8 chapters respectively. The *Uttaratāntra* has 66 chapters.

26 On *viṃśa* in the sense of “greater by 20” see P.5.2.46 *śadantaviṃśateś ca*.

27 The end of this sentence reads oddly. The vulgate edition adds an object: “[we shall mention] the remaining topics [in the Uttara]” which smooths out the difficulty, but this is supported in none of the Nepalese MSS. At the start of the Uttaratāntra (**vulgate**) there is indeed a statement that picks up the point about there being 120 chapters.

28 See footnote 8.

Sūtrasthāna 2: The Initiation of a Student

Literature

[HIML](#): IA, 204prei-2007wujad-2012.

Translation

Sūtrasthāna 3: The Table of Contents

Literature

Translation

1
54 ²⁹

Sūtrasthāna 13: On Leeches

Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of studies on Indian leeches and their application.³⁰

A Persian version of this chapter of the *Suśrutasamhitā* was included in *Sikandar Shāh's Mine of Medicine* (*Ma'din al-shifā' i Sikandar-Shāhī*) composed in 1512 by Miyān Bhūwah b. Khawāṣṣ Khān.³¹

More recently, Brooks has explored the sense of touch in relation to leeching and patient-physician interactions.³²

Translation

- 1 And now we shall explain **the chapter** about leeches.
- 3 The leech is for the benefit of kings, rich people, delicate people, children, the elderly, fearful people and women. It is said to be the most gentle means for letting blood.
- 4 In that context, one should let blood that is corrupted by wind, bile or phlegm with a horn, a leech, or a gourd, respectively. Or, each kind can be made to flow by any of them in their particular way.³³

³⁰ HIML: IA, 209; IB, 324, n. 131.

³¹ **sidd-1959azee-1971stor-1971**HIML: IB, 324, n. 128**spez-2019**.

³² **broo-2020; broo-2020b; broo-2020c; broo-2021**.

³³ This sentence is hard to construe grammatically, although its meaning seems clear. In place of विशेषस्तु, Cakrapāṇidatta and Ḍalhana both read विशेषतस्, which helps interpretation (**acar-1939, vulgate**). It is noteworthy that the critical syllable स्तु is smudged or corrected in both MS Kathmandu NAK 1-1079 and in 1-1146, a much later Devanāgarī manuscript.

There is an insertion in the text, printed in parentheses in the vulgate at 1.13.4

- 5x And there are the following about this:
- 1.13.5 The horn of cows is praised for being unctuous, **smooth**, and very sweet. Therefore, when wind is troubled, that is good for bloodletting.³⁴
- 1.13.5a Having a length of seven fingers and a large body the shape of a half moon, should first be placed into a cut. A strong person should suck with the mouth.³⁵
- 6 A leech lives in the cold, is sweet and is born in the water. So when someone is afflicted by bile, they are suitable for bloodletting.³⁶
- 7 A gourd is well known for being pungent, dry and sharp. So when someone is afflicted by phlegm it is suitable for bloodletting.
- 8 In that context, at the scarified location one should let blood using a horn wrapped in a covering of a thin bladder, or with a gourd with a flame inside it because of the suction.³⁷
- 9 Leeches are called “*jala-ayu-ka*” because water (*jala*) is their life (*āyur*).³⁸ “Home” (*okas*) means “dwelling;” their home is water, so they are called “water-dwellers (*jalaaukas*).”
- 10 There are twelve of them: six are venomous and just the same number are non-venomous.
- 11 Here is an explanation of the venomous ones, together with the therapy:

(**vulgate**) as विशेषतस्तु विस्राव्यं शृङ्गजलौकालाबुभिर्गृहीयात्. This insertion is not included in the earlier edition of the vulgate, but is replaced by सिग्धशीतरूक्षत्वात् (**susr-trikamji2**). Dalhaṇa noted that, “this reading is discussed to some extent by some compilers (निबन्धकार), but it is definitely rejected by most of them, including Jejjhaṭa.”

- 34 The vulgate replaced “smooth” with “hot.”
- 35 This passage is not found in the vulgate, but it is similar to the passage cited by Dalhaṇa at 1.13.8 (**vulgate**) and attributed to Bhāluki. Bhāluki was the author of a *Bhālukitantra* that may have predated Jejjhaṭa and might even have been one of the sources for the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* (HIML: IA, 689–690 *et passim*). The editor Ācārya was aware of this reading in the Nepalese manuscripts; see his note 4 on 1.13.5 (**vulgate**).
- 36 Note that the particular qualities (*guṇas*) of the leech in this and the following verses counteract the quality of the affliction. See **broo-2018**.
- 37 There are questions about the wrapping or covering of the horn. Other versions of the text, and the commentator, propose that there may be two coverings, or that cloth may be a constituent. Comparison with contemporary horn-bloodletting practice by traditional Sudanese healers suggests that a covering over the top hole in the horn is desirable when sucking, to prevent the patient’s blood entering the mouth (**pbs-2020**). Our understanding of this verse is that the bladder material is used to cover the mouthpiece and then to block it, in order to preserve suction in the horn for a few minutes while the blood is let.
- 38 This is a folk etymology.

- Black (*kṛṣṇā*)
- Mottled (*karburā*)
- Sting-gush (*alagarddā*)³⁹
- Rainbow (*indrāyudhā*)
- Oceanic (*sāmudrikā*)
- Cow-praising (*govandanā*)⁴⁰

Amongst these,

- The one called a Black is the colour of kohl and has a broad head;
- The one called Mottled is like the Indian mottled eel, long with a segmented (*chinna*), humped belly.
- The one called Sting-gush is hairy, has large sides and a black mouth.
- The one called Rainbow is coloured like a rainbow, with vertical stripes.
- The one called Oceanic is slightly blackish-yellow, and is covered with variegated flower patterns.
- The one called Govandana is like a cow's testicles, having a bifurcated form on the lower side, and a tiny mouth.

When someone is bitten by them, the symptoms are: a swelling at the site of the bite, excessive itching and fainting, fever, a temperature, and vomiting. In that context the Great Antidote (*mahāgada*) should be applied in drinks and liniments (*ālepana*), etc.⁴¹ A bite by the Rainbow leech is not treatable. These venomous ones have been explained together with their remedies.

12 Now the ones without venom.⁴²

- Tawny (*kapilā*)
- Ruddy (*piṅgalā*)
- Dart-mouth (*śaṅkumukhī*)
- Mouse (*mūṣikā*)

39 Treating गर्दा as गर्दा and translating as in RV 8.1.20, with **jami-2014**. But if गर्द is to be taken from √गर्द् then we might have “crying from the sting.”

40 The manuscripts all read गोवन्दना against the vulgate's गोचन्दना.

41 The “Great Antidote” is described in the Kalpasthāna, at 5.5.61–63ab (**vulgate**). Ḍalhaṇa and the vulgate included errhines in the list of therapies, and Ḍalhaṇa added that “etc.” indicated showers and baths too.

42 The translations of the names of these leeches are slightly whimsical, but give a sense of the original; *sāvarikā* remains etymologically puzzling.

- Lotus-mouth (*puṇḍarikamukhī*)
- Sāvarikā (*sāvarikā*)

Amongst these,

- The one called Tawny has sides that look as if they are dyed with realgar and is the colour of glossy mung beans on the back.⁴³
- The one called Ruddy is a bit red, has a round body, is yellowish, and moves fast.
- The one called Dart-mouth is the colour of liver, drinks fast and has a long mouth.
- The one called Mouse is the colour and shape of a mouse and has an undesirable smell.
- The one called Lotus is the colour of mung beans and has a mouth that looks like a lotus.
- The one called Sāvarikā has the colour of a lotus leaf and is eighteen centimetres long. But that one is used when the purpose is an animal.

The non-venomous ones have been explained.

- 13 Their lands are Yavana, Pāṇḍya, Sahya, Potana and so on.⁴⁴ Those in

43 The compound सिग्धमुद्गवर्ण is supported by all the manuscript witnesses and is translated here. Nevertheless, the reading of the vulgate, that separates सिग्धा, f., “slimy” as an adjective for the leech, seems more plausible: “it is slimy and the colour of a mung bean.”

44 This passage is discussed by **kart-2015**. At the time of the composition of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*, Yavana would most likely have referred the Hellenistic Greek diaspora communities in Bactria and India (**law-1984mair-2013mair-2014**). Unproblematically, the Pāṇḍya country is the extreme south-eastern tip of the Indian subcontinent (**schw-1978**), and Sahya refers to the Western Ghats (**schw-1978**). The vulgate reading “Pautana” is not a known toponym. Potana was the ancient capital of the Aśmaka Mahājanapada mentioned in Pali sources and in inscriptions at Ajāntā and elsewhere, and identified by **law-1984gupt-1989** with Pratiṣṭhāna, modern Paithan on the Godavari river. The recurring ancient epithet describing the Aśmaka kingdom is that it was on the Godāvarī, and Paithan is flanked to the south west and south east by this river.

Some scholars have identified the name with modern Bodhan in Telangana (**sirc-1971schw-1978sen-1988**), but this implausible identification is traceable to a speculative suggestion by **rayc-1953** based on a variant form “Podana” found in some early manuscripts of the *Mahābhārata*: “This name reminds one of Bodhan in the Nizam’s dominions,” “possibly to be identified with Bodhan.”

Dalhaṇa on 1.13.13 (**vulgate**) anachronistically identified “Yavana” as the land of

- particular have large bodies and are strong, they drink rapidly, consume a lot, and are without venom.
- 14 In that context, the venomous leeches are those originating in decomposing venomous insects, frogs, urine, feces and in polluted water.⁴⁵ The , non-venomous ones originate in decomposing sacred lotus, blue water-lily, white water-lily, fragrant lotus, pondweed and in pure waters.
- 15 There is a verse on this:

*These ones move about in sweet-smelling habitats that are abundant with water. Traditionally, they do not behave in a confused manner or lie in the mud.*⁴⁶

- 16 They can be caught with a fresh hide or after being caught in other ways.⁴⁷
- 17 Then these should be put into a large new pot furnished with mud and the water from lakes or wells. One should provide what they need to eat. One should grind up pondweed, dried meat, and aquatic tubers, and one should give them grass and aquatic leaves to lie on, and every three days water and food. Every week, one should transfer them into a different pot.
- 18 And on this:

the Turks (तुरुष्क) and “Pautana” as the Mathurā region. He also noted, as did Cakrapāṇidatta (acar-1939), that this passage was not included by some authorities on the grounds that the habitats of poisonous and non-poisonous creatures are defined by other criteria.

45 The vulgate on 4.13.14 (**vulgate**) includes fish in this list.

46 Ḍalhaṇa on 1.13.14 (**vulgate**) discussed why the leeches would not “behave in a confused manner” (सङ्कीर्णचारिन्), saying that they do not “eat a diet that is unwholesome because of poison etc.” (विषादिविरुद्धाहारभुजः). The use of विरुद्ध is odd here, but cf. Ḍalhaṇa’s suggestion at 4.23.4 (**vulgate**) that विरुद्ध refers to the chapter on wholesome and unwholesome foods (हिताहिताध्याय, 1.20 (**vulgate**)).

47 “Fresh hide” (आर्द्रचर्मन्) may suggest that the animal skin still includes meat or blood that is attractive to a leech.

The Nepalese witnesses all read गृहीत्वा “having (been) caught” for the vulgate’s गृहीयात् “one may grasp (by other means).” This is hard to construe clearly.

Ḍalhaṇa on 1.13.15 (**vulgate**) quoted “another treatise” (तन्त्रान्तरवचनात्) that said that autumn is the time to collect leeches. He also explained that “other methods” of collecting leeches included smearing a leg or other limb with cream, butter or milk, etc., or using a piece of flesh from a freshly killed animal.

*One should not **nurture** those that are thick in the middle, that are injured,⁴⁸ or **thin**, those that are not born in the proper habitat, those that will not attach, that drink little or those that are venomous.*

- 19 First of all, get the patient who has an ailment that is treatable by leech-bloodletting to sit or lie down. Then, dry **any diseased opening** with powders of earth and cow-dung. Then make them free from impurities, with their bodies smeared with Indian mustard and turmeric and moving about in the middle of a cup of water. After all this, the physician should make them attach to the site of the ailment. Now, for those that are not attaching, he should provide a drop of milk or a drop of blood. Alternatively, one should make some marks with a knife (*śas-trapada*).⁴⁹ And if it still will not attach, make other ones attach.
- 20 He can know that it is attached when it fixes on, hunching its neck and making a mouth like a horse's hoof. Then, he should cover it with a wet cloth and keep it there.
- 21 Now, if the physician knows, from the arising of pricking and itching at the bite, that clean blood is being taken, he should take it off. Then, if it does not release because of the scent of blood one should sprinkle its mouth with powdered rock salt.
- 22 Then he should coat it with rice-grain chaff, rub its mouth with sesame oil and salt and cause it to vomit by holding its tail in his left hand and very slowly rubbing it with the thumb and finger of his right hand in the proper direction, as far as the mouth, until it is properly purged.⁵⁰ A properly purged leech placed in a goblet of water moves about, wanting to eat. If it sinks down, not moving, it is badly purged; one should make it vomit once again.

A badly purged leech develops an incurable disease called Indrapada.⁵¹

One that protects its deflated head with its body, suddenly curls up and makes the water warm is traditionally said to have Indrapada.

48 Pace Ḍalhana on 1.13.18 (**vulgate**) who glossed अमनोज्ञदर्शन as “nasty looking.”

49 On पद as a “mark,” “imprint,” or “place of application,” cf. 4.1.29 (**vulgate**), 5.4.15 (**vulgate**), etc. See footnote 420.

50 The expression शालितण्डुलकाण्डन, “rice-grain chaff” could be read as “unhusked rice, rice grains and chaff” but this seems unlikely in the context.

51 The Nepalese witnesses read इन्द्रपद/इन्द्रापद, but the vulgate reads इन्द्रमद, a term that is found in other texts such as the *Manasollasa* 6.641 (vol. 1, 87), where it is a fever affecting fish, and the *Garudapurana* 1.147.3 (tr. *garuda*) where it is fever affecting clouds; see further **broo-inpress**.

- Thus, one should keep such a one as before.⁵²
- 23 After observing the proper or improper flow of the blood, one should rub the opening made by the leech with honey.⁵³ Alternatively, one may bind it up and smear it with ointments that are astringent, sweet, oily and cold.
- 24 And about this there is the following:
- When the leeches have just drunk, one should pour ghee on it. And one should pour on to the blood things that are capable of stopping the blood.*
- 25 *Someone who knows habitats, the capture, feeding and bloodletting of leeches is worthy to treat a king.*

52 The vulgate includes “well purged” as the object in this sentence, which makes better sense.

53 In the Nepalese witnesses, the object of this passage is जलौकामुखम् “the mouth of the leech,” that we have interpreted, perhaps freely, as “opening made by the leech.” Logically and as transmitted in the vulgate, this passage should be about managing the wound on the patient that has been made by the leech.

Sūtrasthāna 14: On Blood

Previous scholarship

Meulenbeld offered both an annotated summary of this chapter as well as a study specifically on the place of blood in Ayurvedic theory.⁵⁴

Translation

- 1 Now we shall declare the chapter about blood.
- 2
- 3 Food is of four types.⁵⁵ It is endowed with six tastes and is made of the five elements.⁵⁶ It has either two or eight potencies, and is endowed with many qualities. ⁵⁷ Chyle (*rasa*) is the most intangible essence of this food that is properly transformed. It is of the nature of fire. Chyle is situated in the heart. From the heart, it enters into the twenty-four arteries—ten upward arteries, ten downward, and four

54 [HIML](#): IA, 209–201 and [meul-1991](#). Meulenbeld’s footnotes on this chapter in [HIML](#): IB, 325 ff. refer often to “Hoernle’s note.” This appears to be a reference to Hoernle’s copious notes to his translation of this chapter ([hoer-1897](#)). [meul-1990](#) also discussed Sanskrit veterinary texts in the light of their standard theory of four humours, including blood.

55 Ḍalhaṇa on 1.14.3 (**vulgate**) said that the four types of food are those that can be drunk, licked, eaten and chewed (पेयलेह्यभोज्यभक्ष्य). The main text of the *Carakasamhitā* is explicit about these categories at 4.3.4(1) (**cara-trikamji3**): पानाशनभक्ष्यलेह्य । “things drunk, eaten, chewed or licked.” [yagi-1994](#) discussed the distinction between भक्ष्य and भोज्य; for further Indological background on foods, see the studies by [oliv-1995](#); [oliv-2001](#) and the classic reference works by [acha-1994](#); [acha-1998](#). The long, final adhyāya of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*’s sūtrasthāna (ch. 46) is a treatise on food in āyurveda.

56 *Idem*, Earth, water, fire, air, space

57 Ḍalhaṇa related these qualities to the twenty standard गुण of āyurveda; see, e.g., their listing by Vāgbhaṭa, translated by [wuja-2003](#).

sideways—and doing so day after day owing to the reaction of past activities that are caused by the invisible,⁵⁸ it satisfies the entire body, enlivens it, prolongs it,⁵⁹ and makes it grow. The motion of the entity that flows throughout the body should be understood by inference. That motion causes deterioration and growth.

With regards to the chyle that flows through all the limbs, humours, body tissues, and impurities of the body, the question arises, “Is it moist or is it fiery?” It is understood to be moist because of its fluidity while flowing⁶⁰ and due to attributes such as mobility, lubrication, enlivening, satisfaction, and supporting.⁶¹

- 4 That watery chyle is then reddened after reaching the liver and spleen.
5 There are verses about this.

Experts know that blood is the untransformed fluid that is reddened by the pure fire element within the bodies of living beings.

- 6 *It is only due to chyle that women’s blood called menses exists. It increases from the twelfth year and decreases after the fiftieth year.*
7 The menstrual blood, however, is called fiery.⁶² That is due to the embryo being fiery and moist.⁶³
8 Others state that the embryo as constituted of the five elements and the preceptors call it the living blood.
9 There are verses about this.

That is because blood exhibits the qualities of earth, etc. such as a fleshy smell, fluidity, redness, pulsation and thinness.

- 58 अदृष्ट (unseen): Doing any righteous or unrighteous action produces good merit and demerit respectively. This good merit and demerit are called अदृष्ट (invisible) because it cannot be directly known but can only be assumed through logical deduction.
59 In the sense of prolonging its lifespan
60 The vulgate emends अनुसरणे to अनुसरण- against the Nepalese MSS. This is logical because mobility would seem to be one of the attributes. Although it is awkward, we read अनुसरणे as a locative absolute “while flowing.”
61 The duality being discussed here is that of the essential qualities of Fire and of Soma (agni and soma). See further discussion by wuja-2004 and ange-2021.
62 Ḍalhaṇa commented that this is to distinguish the menstrual blood from regular blood that is gentle.
63 Ḍalhaṇa commented here that the embryo is called such because the menstrual blood is fiery and the semen is gentle (सौम्य). On the fiery/moist distinction (आग्नेय/सौम्य), see wuja-2004; ange-2021.

- 10 *Blood is formed from chyle, flesh from blood, lymph from flesh, bone from lymph, marrow from bone, semen from marrow, and progeny from semen.*
- 11 There, the essence (chyle) of food and drink is the nourisher of these body tissues.
- 12 There is a verse about this.

A living being should be known as born from chyle. One should diligently preserve⁶⁴ chyle by administering food and drink, being nicely disciplined with food⁶⁵.

- 13 The verbal root *rasa* means movement.⁶⁶ Because it keeps moving day after day, it is called *rasa* (chyle).⁶⁷
- 14 Chyle stays in every body tissue for 2548 ((25*100)+48) *kalās* and nine *kāṣṭhas*. As such, it becomes semen after a month. For women, it becomes menses.
- 15 Here are verses about this.

*According to similar and dissimilar treatises, the quantity of *kalās* in this group⁶⁸ is 18,090.*

This is the particular transformation period regarding chyle that lasts for a person with mild fire⁶⁹. For a person with developed fire, one should know it to last for the exact same time⁷⁰

64 All three manuscripts have रक्षेत which is an incorrect form. रक्षेत् is the correct form.

65 आहारेण - The third case is used. The semantic property of the third case used here is unclear. Unclear regarding if there is any rule in the *Aṣṭādhyāyī* justifying this usage.

66 kunj-1907

67 In the list of verbal roots of Pāṇini, the verbal root रस(*rasa*) means taste and moistening. It does not mean movement.

68 duration of chyle in all the body tissues as a whole

69 Perhaps this refers to the digestive fire.

70 Although the vulgate does not have this verse, there is an argument presented in Ḍalhaṇa's commentary on 1.14.16 (**vulgate**) that for a person with intense fire, chyle becomes semen after eight days, and for a person with mild fire, chyle becomes semen after a month. Ḍalhaṇa said that this opinion is refuted by Gayadāsa Ācārya in many different ways. Ḍalhaṇa continued that the proper understanding is that for a person with a strong fire, chyle becomes blood in a little less than a month, and for a person with a mild fire, chyle becomes blood in a little more than a month.

- 16 Resembling the expanse of sound, flame, and water, that entity moves along in a minute manner throughout the entire body⁷¹.
- 17 The aphrodisiac medicines, however, being used like a purgative due to their excessively strong characteristics, evacuate the semen.
- 18 Just as it cannot be said that the fragrance in a flower bud is present in it or not, but accepting that there is the manifestation of existing entities⁷², it,⁷³ however, is not experienced only due to its intangibility. That same entity is experienced at another time in the blossomed flower. In the same way regarding children also, the manifestation of semen happens because of the advancement of age⁷⁴. For women, the manifestation is different as rows of hair, menses, etc.
- 19 That very essence of food does not nourish very old people due to their decaying bodies.
- 20 These entities are called body tissues (*dhātu-s*) because they bear the body⁷⁵.
- 21 Their decay and growth are due to blood. Therefore, I will speak about blood. In that regard: The blood that is foamy, tawny, black, rough, thin, quick-moving, and non-coagulating is vitiated by air. The blood that is dark green, yellow, green, brown, sour-smelling, and unpleasant to ants and flies is vitiated by bile. The blood that is orange, unctuous, cool, dense, slimy, flowing, and resembling the colour of flesh-muscles is vitiated by phlegm. The blood having all these characteristics is vitiated by the combination of all three of them. The blood that is extremely black is vitiated by blood⁷⁶ just as bile. The blood that has the combined characteristics of vitiations of two humours is vitiated by two humours.
- 22 The blood that is of the colour of insect cochineal, not thick, and not

71 Ḍalhana comments (**vulgate**) that the expanse of sound indicates the sideways movement of chyle, the expanse of flame indicates the upward movement of chyle, and the expanse of water indicates the downward movement of chyle.

72 This is the doctrine of pre-existence of the effect (सत्कार्यवाद, *satkāryavāda*) first propounded by Sāṅkhya philosophers.

73 fragrance

74 Since chyle becomes semen in a month's time, a question arises "Why then is semen absent in young children?". The reply is given in this passage.

75 The etymological meaning of the Sanskrit word धातु (*dhātu*) is "that which bears [the body]". Thus, the body tissues are called *dhātu-s* because they bear the body. This means that the body tissues are the elements that make up the body and sustain it.

76 **vulgate** quote Cakrapāṇidatta in a footnote: "This is the symptom when the blood vitiated in one part of the body vitiates the blood in another part."

discoloured should be understood to be in its natural state.

- 23 I will speak of the types of blood that should be let out in another section.
- 24 Now, I speak of those that should not be let out. The swelling appearing in all the limbs of the body of a weak person that happens due to consuming sour food. The swellings of people with jaundice, piles, large abdomen, emaciation, and those of pregnant women.
- 26 In that regard, one should quickly insert the surgical instrument that is simple, not very close, fine, uniform, not deep, and not shallow.
- 26a One should not insert the instrument into the heart, lower belly, anus, navel, waist, groins, eyes, forehead, palms, and soles.
- 26b In the case of swellings filled with pus, one should treat them in the same way as stated earlier.
- 27-27a There, when the swelling is not pierced properly, when phlegm and air have not been sweated out, after having a meal, and due to thickness, the blood does not ooze out or oozes out less. Here is a verse regarding it.
- 28ab-cd *Blood does not ooze out of humans when in contact with air, passing stool or urine, and when intoxicated, unconscious, fatigued, sleeping, or in cold surroundings.*
- 29 That vitiated blood when not taken out increases the disease.
- 30 The blood that is let by an ignorant physician in cases of very hot surroundings, profuse perspiration, and excessive piercing, flows excessively. That profuse bleeding causes the appearance of acute headache, blindness, and partial blindness, or it quickly causes subsequent wasting, convulsions, tremors, hemiplegia, paralysis in a limb, hiccups, coughing, panting, jaundice, or death.
- 31ab-cd The physician should let out the blood when the weather is not very hot or cold, when the patient is not perspiring or heated up, and after the patient has had a sufficient intake of gruel.
- 32ab-cd After coming out properly, when the blood stops automatically, one should know that blood to be pure and drained properly.
- 33ab-cd The symptoms of the proper drainage of blood are the experience of lightness, alleviation of pain, a complete end of the intensity of the disease, and satisfaction of the mind.
- 34ab-cd Defects of the skin, tumours, swellings, and all diseases caused by blood never arise for those who regularly drain their blood.
- 35 When the blood does not flow out, the physician should rub cardamom

and camphor on the opening of the boil with three or four or all among crêpe ginger (*Cheilocostus speciosus*), butterfly gardenia (*Ervatamia coronaria* Stapf), velvet-leaf, deodar, embelia, leadwort, the three spices (black pepper, long pepper, and dry ginger), *āgāradhūma*, turmeric, sprouts of purple calotropis, and fruit of the Indian beech, according to availability, with excessive salt. By doing so, the blood flows out properly.

- 36 When there is an excessive flow of blood, the physician should sprinkle the opening of the boil with dry powders of lodh tree, liquorice, beautyberry, *pattāṅga*, red chalk, elixir salve, seashell, barley, green gram, wheat, and resin of the Sāla tree, and then press it with the tip of a finger. One should tightly bind it with powdered barks of Sāla, white dammer tree, arjun, white babool, *granthi*, axlewood, and *dhanvana* (Camelthorn), or a linen cloth⁷⁷, or *vadhyāsita*, or bone of cuttlefish, or powdered lac, along with the binding materials mentioned. After the piercing, the physician should pierce it again. The physician should serve cool clothing, food, a dwelling place, a bath, cooling ointments, and plastering. Or, one can cauterize it with heat. Or, as mentioned, one should give a decoction of *kākolī*, etc. sweetened by sugar and honey to drink. Or, one should consume the blood of black buck, deer, ram, buffalo, rabbit, or pig, accompanied by milk, green gram soup and meat soup⁷⁸. The physician should treat the pains as mentioned.

36a Here are verses about this.

- 37ab-cd *When blood flows out due to the decay of body tissue, fire becomes weak⁷⁹ and the wind becomes highly agitated because of that endeavour.*
- 38ab-cd *The physician should serve the patient food that is not very cold, light in digestion, unctuous, increases blood, slightly sour or not sour at all.*
- 39ab-cd *This is the four-fold method of hindering blood: joining, coagulation, haemostasis. and cauterization.*
- 40ab-cd *The astringent substance joins the opening, the cold substance coagulates the blood, the ash stops the blood, and cauterization con-*

77 **vulgate** has क्षौमेण वा ध्यापितेन - "with linen reduced to ashes". Presumably, it is this ash that is also referred to in item 40.

78 Based on Ḍalhaṇa's comment as found in **vulgate**

79 This refers to the digestive fire.

- tracts the blood vessel.
- 41ab-cd *If the blood does not coagulate, the physician should employ joining. If the blood does not stop by joining the opening then he should employ haemostasis.*
- 42ab-cd *The physician should endeavour by employing these three methods according to the procedure. If these methods are unsuccessful then cauterization is highly desirable.*
- 43ab-cd *If the blood remains impure, the disease does not aggravate. The physician should then make the blood pure⁸⁰ and not drain blood in excess.*
- 44ab-cd *Blood is the basis of the body. It is sustained by blood only.*
- 44ef *Blood is called life. One should therefore save blood.*
- 45ab-cd *If the air in the person who underwent blood-letting is aggravated due to a cold shower, etc., the swelling with pricking pain should be sprinkled with lukewarm clarified butter.*

Can't be
"sedation"

80 Ḍalhaṇa comments (**vulgate**) that one should purify the blood again by sedation, etc.

Sūtrasthāna 16: Repairing Pierced Ears

Previous literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.⁸¹ A book on this topic, arising out of the present project, with edition, translation and discussion of the Nepalese transmission is published by **wuja-2023**.

Translation

- 1 Now we shall expound the method for piercing the ear.⁸²

⁸¹ [HIML](#): IA, 211–212317.

⁸² The topic of piercing the ear (*kaṛṇavyadhā*) is not discussed in the *Carakasamhitā* ([HIML](#): IB, 326, n. 175), but it is mentioned in some texts that followed the *Suśrutasamhitā*, such as the *Kaśāpyasamhitā* ([HIML](#): IIA, 30). Also, the instrument for piercing the ear is described in the *Aṣṭāṅgahṛdayasamhitā* 1.26.26 (**kunt-1939**). In the versions of the text known to Ḍalhaṇa (**vulgate**) and Cakrapāṇidatta (**acar-1939**), the heading of this chapter is “the method of piercing and joining the ear” (कर्णव्यधबन्धविधि), instead of the Nepalese version’s “the method of piercing the ear” (कर्णव्यधविधि). The topic of joining the ear (कर्णबन्ध) is discussed in passages 17–20 of the Nepalese version. However, it appears that only subsequent redactors reflected its importance by including it in chapter headings.

The Nepalese version also omits the opening remark on Dhanvantari that appears in subsequent versions of the text. For a discussion of the frame story in the Nepalese version, see **birc-2021**.

When commenting on this statement, Ḍalhaṇa (**vulgate**) and Cakrapāṇidatta (**acar-1939**) observed that only the ears of healthy people should be pierced, and they quoted the lost authority Bhoja to affirm this: “When piercing the ears of children

- 2 One may pierce a child's ears for the purpose of preserving and decorating. During the bright fortnight, when the child is in the sixth or seventh month, on renowned days, half days, hours and constellations, the physician, with a calming presence, sits the boy, who has received a benediction and the recitation of a blessing,⁸³ on the lap of a wet-nurse.⁸⁴ Then, he should pull the ear with his left hand and pierce straight through with his right hand at a naturally-occurring cleft.⁸⁵ For a boy, do the right ear first; for a girl, do the left one. Use a needle on a thin ear; an awl on a thick one.⁸⁶
- 3 One may know that it was pierced in the wrong place if there is excess blood or too much pain. The absence of side-effects is a sign that it has been pierced in the right place.⁸⁷
- 4 In this context, if an ignorant person randomly pierces a duct there will

who are free of disease at these times, their ear flaps and apertures, as well as limbs, increase" (1.16.1 (**vulgate**)).

Some texts use the adjective कर्ण-वेधनी rather than व्यधनी.

- 83 The causative form व्यधयेत् is known in Classical Sanskrit (**whit-root**). The compound कृतमङ्गलस्वस्तिवाचनं "who has received a benediction and the recitation of a blessing" is an emendation based on the similar text at 3.2.25 (**vulgate**). Cf. also 3.10.8, 24 (**vulgate**) that have slightly different formulations.
- 84 The versions of 1.16.3 known to Cakrapāṇidatta (**acar-1939**) and Ḍalhaṇa (**vulgate**) have the additional compound कुमारधराङ्के ("on the lap of one who holds the child") after धात्र्यङ्के. The gender of कुमारधर is made clear by Ḍalhaṇa's gloss "a man who holds the child." Also, both versions add बालक्रीडनकैः प्रलोभ्य ("having enticed with children's toys") to indicate that the child should be tempted with toys to stay on the assistant's lap. According to Ḍalhaṇa on 1.16.3 (**vulgate**), the toys include replica elephants, horses, bulls and parrots. Ḍalhaṇa further mentions that others read भक्ष्य-विशेषैर्वा ("or by special treats") before बालक्रीडनकैः, but we see no trace of these small kindnesses in our witnesses.
- 85 The versions of 1.16.3 of Cakrapāṇidatta (**acar-1939**) and Ḍalhaṇa (**vulgate**) add that this naturally-occurring cleft is illuminated by a ray of sunshine (आदित्यकरावभासिते). The syntax of this slightly long sentence is unusual because of the dual object तौ "the two (ears)" at the start of the sentence, which is remote from the main verb. The other singular accusatives referring to the ear being pierced are governed by absolutes.
- 86 Ḍalhaṇa on 1.16.3 (**vulgate**) clarifies that the awl is a shoe-maker's knife for piercing leather. He also cites the authority of "the notes of Lakṣmaṇa" (*Lakṣmaṇaṭippaṇaka*) on the issue of the thickness of the needle. *The Notes of Lakṣmaṇa* is not known from any earlier or contemporary sources and was presumably a collection of glosses on the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* that was available to Ḍalhaṇa in twelfth-century Bengal. See Meulenbeld ([HIML](#): IA, 386).
- 87 At this point, MS Kathmandu KL 699 is missing a folio, so the rest of this chapter is constructed on the basis of witnesses MS Kathmandu NAK 5-333 and MS Kathmandu

- be fever, burning, swelling, pain, lumps, paralysis of the nape of the neck, convulsions, headache or sharp pain in the ear.⁸⁸
- 5 Having removed the wick (*vartti*) because of the accumulation of humours or an unsatisfactory piercing at that location,⁸⁹ he should smear it with barley, liquorice, Indian madder, and the root of the castor oil tree, thickened with honey and ghee. And when it has healed well, he should pierce it again.⁹⁰
 - 6 He should treat the properly-pierced ear by sprinkling it with raw sesame oil. After every three days one should make a thicker wick and do the very same sprinkling.⁹¹
 - 7 Once the ear is free from humours or side-effects, one should put in a light dilator (*pravardhanaka*) in order to enlarge it enough.⁹²

NAK 1-1079.

- 88 This passage is significantly augmented in Cakrapāṇidatta's and Ḍalhaṇa's versions, to outline the specific problems caused by piercing three ducts called कालिका, मर्मिका and लोहितिका (1.16.4 (**acar-1939**) and 1.16.5 (**vulgate**) respectively). In fact, the order of the problems mentioned in the Nepalese version has been retained in the other versions and divided between each duct. Cakrapāṇidatta's commentary on 1.16.4 (**acar-1939**) cites several verses attributed to Bhoja on the problems caused by piercing these three ducts in the ear flap: 'लोहितिका, मर्मिका and the black ones are the ducts situated in the earflaps. Listen in due order to the problems that arise when they are pierced. Paralysis of the nape of the neck and convulsions, or sharp pain arise from piercing लोहितिका. Pain and lumps are thought to arise from piercing मर्मिका. Piercing कालिका gives rise to swelling, fever and burning.'
- 89 In addition to these reasons, Ḍalhaṇa at 1.16.6 (**vulgate**) added "because of piercing with a painful, crooked and unsatisfactory needle" (क्लिष्टजिह्वाप्रशस्तसूचीव्यधात्) and "because of a wick that is too thick" (गाढतरवर्तित्वात्). Ḍalhaṇa was aware of the reading in the Nepalese version because in his commentary on 1.16.6 (**vulgate**) he noted that some read "because of the accumulation of humours" rather than "because of piercing with a painful, crooked and unsatisfactory needle or because of a wick that is too thick." On the concept of humoral accumulation (*samudāya*), see the important analysis by **meul-1992**.
- 90 The description of the drug is ambiguous: the word "root" could be taken with each plant, or just with the last. The vulgate reads just "castor oil root" so we assume that is the traditional interpretation.
- 91 Describing ear and nose operations similar to those here, Celsus described the use of a quill (Latin *pinna*) where the Sanskrit authors use a cotton wick (*De Medicina* VII ¶10–11, **spen-1935**).
- 92 Cakrapāṇidatta on 1.16.6 (**acar-1939**) and Ḍalhaṇa on 1.16.8 (**vulgate**) pointed out that the dilator can be made of wood, such as that of the prickly chaff-flower, the neem tree and tree cotton. Ḍalhaṇa added that it can also be made of lead and should have the shape of the datura flower. The manuscripts have variant readings for लघुप्र-

- 8 A person's ear enlarged in this way can split in two, either as a result of the humours⁹³ or a blow.

Listen to me about the ways of joining it can have.

- 9 Here, there are, in brief, fifteen ways of mending the ear flap.⁹⁴ They are as follows: Rim-join (*nemīsandhānaka*), Lotus-splittable (*utpalabhedyaka*), Dried Flesh (*vallūraka*), Fastening (*āsaṅgima*), Cheek-ear (*gaṇḍakarṇa*), Take away (*āhārya*), Ready-Split (*nirvedhima*), Multi-joins (*vyāyojima*), Door-hinge (*kapāṭasandhika*), Half door-hinge (*ardhakapāṭasandhika*), Compressed (*saṃkṣipta*), Reduced-ear (*hīnakarṇa*), Creeper-ear (*vallīkarṇa*), Stick-ear (*yaṣṭīkarṇa*), and Crow's lip (*kākausṭha*).⁹⁵

In this context, among these,

Rim-join:	both flaps are wide, long, and equal.
Lotus-splittable:	both flaps are round, long, and equal.
Dried flesh:	both flaps are short, round, and equal.
Fastening:	one flap is longer on the inside.
Cheek-ear:	one flap is longer on the outside. ⁹⁶
Take-away:	the flaps are missing, in fact, on both sides.
Ready-split:	the flaps are like a dais (<i>pīṭha</i>).
Multi-joins:	one flap is small, the other thick, one flap is equal, the other unequal.
Door-hinge:	the flap on the inside is long, the other is small.
Half door-hinge:	the flap on the outside is long, the other is small.

वर्धनकमामुञ्चेत् at this point that include a scribal emendation, none of which construe plausibly. It is possible that the unusual verb form आ+√मुच् puzzled the scribes and caused the implausible scribal readings and emendations.

93 Ḍalhaṇa on 1.16.9 (**vulgate**) notes that the word दोष here can refer to either a humour, such as wind, as we have understood it, or a disease generated from a humour.

94 The Nepalese version uses the word सन्धान to refer to joining a split in an ear flap, which is consistent with the terminology in the verse cited above (8). However, 1.16.10 of Ḍalhaṇa's version (**vulgate**) uses the term बन्ध here and at the very beginning of the chapter (i.e., 1.16.1) to introduce the topic of repairing the ear.

95 For an artist's impression of these different kinds of joins in the ear flap, see **majn-1975** (reproduced as Figure 3.2 in **wuja-2003**).

96 For an artist's impression of this join, see **majn-1975** (reproduced as Figure 3.3 in **wuja-2003**).

These ten options for joins of the ear should be bound. They can mostly be explained as resembling their names.⁹⁷ The five from compressed (*saṃkṣipta*) on are incurable.⁹⁸ Among these, “Compressed” has a dry ear canal and the other flap is small. “Reduced ear” has flaps that have no base and have wasted flesh on their edges. “Creeper-ear” has flaps that are thin and uneven. “Stick-ear” has lumpy flesh and the flaps are stretched thin and have stiff ducts. “Crow-lip” has a flap without flesh with compressed tips and little blood. Even when they are bound up, they do not heal because they are hot, inflamed, suppurating, or swollen.⁹⁹

- 10 A person wishing to perform a join of any of these should therefore have supplies specially prepared according to the recommendations of the “Preparatory Supplies” chapter.¹⁰⁰ And in this regard, he should particularly gather¹⁰¹ top layer of fermented liquor, milk, water, fermented rice-water, and powdered earthenware crockery (*kapālacūrṇa*).¹⁰²

97 Cakrapāṇidatta on 1.16.9–13 (**acar-1939**) and Ḍalhaṇa on 1.16.10 (**vulgate**) provide examples of how the names of these joins describe their shapes. For example, the rim-join (*nemīsandhānaka*) is similar to the join of the rim of a wheel (*cakradhārā*).

98 Ḍalhaṇa on 1.16.10 (**vulgate**) mentions that some do not read the statement that only five are incurable, and they understand the causes of unsuccessful joins given below (i.e., heat, inflammation, suppuration and swelling) as also pertaining to the first ten when they do heal.

99 The version of 1.16.11–13 known to Ḍalhaṇa (**vulgate**) has four verses (श्लोक) at this point that are not in the Nepalese manuscripts. The additional verses iterate the types of joins required for ear flaps that are missing, elongated, thick, wide, etc. All four verses were probably absent in the version of the *Suśrutasamhitā* known to Cakrapāṇidatta. He cites the verses separately in his commentary, the *Bhānumatī* (**acar-1939**), introducing each one as ‘some people read’ (के चित्पठन्ति). However, in Trikamajī Ācārya’s edition of the *Sūtrasthāna* of the *Bhānumatī*, the root text is largely identical to the one commented on by Ḍalhaṇa (**vulgate**), even in instances like this where Cakrapāṇidatta’s commentary indicates that he was reading a different version of the *Suśrutasamhitā*. See further the discussion on p. ?? above.

100 *Suśrutasamhitā* 1.5 (**vulgate**), probably verse 6 especially, that lists the equipment and medications that a surgeon should have ready.

101 The reading in the Nepalese manuscripts of विशेषतश्चाग्नोपहरणीयात् has been emended to विशेषतश्चात्रोपहरेत् to make sense of the list of ingredients, which is in the accusative case. Also, the repetition of अग्नोपहरणीयात् in the Nepalese version suggests that its second occurrence, which does not make good sense here, is a dittographic error.

102 The term कपालचूर्ण is unusual. Ḍalhaṇa (**vulgate**) defines it as the powder of fragments of fresh earthen pots and Cakrapāṇidatta (**acar-1939**) as the powder of earthenware vessels.

Next, having made the woman or man tie up the ends of their hair, eat lightly and be firmly held by qualified attendants, the physician considers the joins and then applies them by means of cutting, splitting, scarification, or piercing.¹⁰³ Next, he should examine the blood of the ear to know whether it is tainted or not. If it is tainted by wind, the ear should be bathed with fermented rice-water and water; if tainted by choler, then cold water and milk should be used; if tainted by phlegm, then top layer of fermented liquor and water should be used, and then he should scarify it again.

After arranging the join in the ear so that it is neither proud, depressed, nor uneven, and observing that the blood has stopped, one should anoint it with honey and ghee, bandage each ear with tree cotton and gauze (*plota*), and bind it up with a thread, neither too tightly nor too loosely. Then, the physician should sprinkle earthenware powder on it and provide medical advice (*ācārika*). And he should supplement with food as taught in the “Two Wound” chapter.¹⁰⁴

- 11 *One should avoid rubbing, sleeping during the day, exercise, overeating, sex, getting hot by a fire, or the effort of speaking.*
- 12 One should not make a join when the blood is too pure, too copious, or too thin.¹⁰⁵ For when the ear is tainted by wind, then it is obstructed by blood, unhealed and will peel. When tainted with choler, it becomes pinched (*gāḍha*), septic and red. When tainted by phlegm, it will be stiff and itchy. It has excessively copious suppuration and is swollen. It has a small amount of wasted (*kṣīṇa*) flesh and it will not grow.¹⁰⁶
- 13 When the ear is properly healed and there are no complications, one may very gradually start to expand it. Otherwise, it may be inflamed (*saṃrambha*), burning, septic or painful. It may even split open again.

103 There are syntactic difficulties in this sentence. We have adopted the reading in Ḍalhaṇa’s version (**vulgate**), which has च कृत्वा following सुपरिगृहीतं. It is likely that a verb, such as कृत्वा, dropped out of the Nepalese transmission.

104 *Suśrutasaṃhitā* 4.1 (**vulgate**).

105 1.16.17 of Ḍalhaṇa’s version (**vulgate**) reads “impure” for the Nepalese “too pure,” which would appear to make better medical sense. Emending the text to नाशुद्ध- for नातिशुद्ध- in the Nepalese version would yield the same meaning as Ḍalhaṇa’s version.

106 In his edition of *Suśrutasaṃhitā*, Ācārya (**vulgate**) includes in parentheses the following treatment for these conditions, which according to a footnote is not found in the palm-leaf manuscript he used: ‘One should sprinkle it with raw sesame oil for three days and one should renew the cotton bandage after three days’ (आमृतैलेन त्रिरात्रं परिषेचयेत्त्रिरात्राच्च पिचुं परिवर्तयेत्).

- 14 Now, massage for the healthy ear, in order to enlarge it.
 One should gather as much as one can the following: a monitor lizard, scavenging and seed-eating birds, and creatures that live in marshes or water,¹⁰⁷ fat, marrow, milk, and sesame oil, and white mustard oil.¹⁰⁸
 Then cook the oil with an admixture of the following: purple calotropis, white calotropis, heart-leaf sida, country mallow, country sarsaparilla, Indian kudzu, liquorice, and hornwort.¹⁰⁹ This should then be deposited in a well-protected spot.
- 15 *The wise man who has been sweated should rub the massaged ear with it. Then it will be free of complications, and will enlarge properly and be strong.*¹¹⁰
- 16 *Ears which do not enlarge even when sweated and oiled, should be scarified at the edge of the hole, but not outside it.*¹¹¹
- 17 *In this tradition, experts know countless repairs to ears. So a physician who is very intent on working in this way may repair them.*¹¹²

¹⁰⁷ For such classifications, see the analyses by zimm-1999 and smit-1994.

¹⁰⁸ Ḍalhaṇa's version of 1.16.19 (**vulgate**) includes ghee. However, Ḍalhaṇa's remarks on this passage and Cakrapāṇidatta's on 1.16.18 (acar-1939) indicate that they knew a version of this recipe, perhaps similar to the Nepalese one, that did not include ghee. Ḍalhaṇa also noted that others simply read four oils, beginning with fat and without milk, whereas Cakrapāṇidatta said that some say it is made with four oils and milk.

¹⁰⁹ The version of of this verse known to Ḍalhaṇa (**vulgate**) adds several ingredients to this admixture, including prickly chaff-flower, Withania, milk-white, sweet plants and Indian ipecac. Also, it has beggarweed instead of Indian kudzu. When commenting on 1.16.19, Ḍalhaṇa (**vulgate**) noted that some do not read sweet plants and Indian ipecac. Therefore, at his time there were other versions of this recipe circulating, with fewer ingredients, as seen in the Nepalese version.

¹¹⁰ For these aims (i.e., healing and enlarging the ear), the text known to Ḍalhaṇa (**vulgate**) had an additional verse and a half describing an ointment for rubbing the ear and sesame oil cooked with various medicines for massage. Cakrapāṇidatta (acar-1939) did not comment on these verses, nor verse 15 of the Nepalese version, and so the version of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* known to him may not have included them.

¹¹¹ Ḍalhaṇa's version of 1.16.23 (**vulgate**) added another hemistich that stated more explicitly that the scarification should not be done on the outside of hole as it will cause derangement.

¹¹² After verse 17, the 1938 edition of Ācārya (**vulgate**) has in parentheses nineteen verses on diseases of the ear lobes, treatments and complications. It is possible that these verses were in some of the witnesses used by Ācārya to construct the text as they occur in other manuscripts, such as MS Hyderabad Osmania 137-3(b). However, Cakrapāṇidatta (acar-1939) and Ḍalhaṇa (**vulgate**) stated that some read about the diseases of the ear lobes in this chapter whereas others read about them in the chapter on various treatments (*miśrakacikitsa*) (SS 5.25), which does indeed begin with a dis-

- 18 If an ear has grown hair, has a nice hole, a firm join, and is strong and even, well-healed, and free from pain, then one can enlarge it slowly.¹¹³
- 19 Now I shall describe the proper method of making a repair when a nose is severed. First, take from the trees a leaf the same size as the man's nose and hang it on him.
- 20 Next, having cut a slice of flesh (vadhra),¹¹⁴ with the same measurements, off the cheek, the end of the nose is then scarified.¹¹⁵ Then the undistracted physician, should quickly put it back together so that it is well joined.
- 21 Having carefully observed that it has been sewn up properly, he should then fasten it along with two tubes.¹¹⁶ Having caused it to be raised,¹¹⁷ the powder of sappanwood,¹¹⁸ liquorice and Indian barberry should be sprinkled on it.¹¹⁹
- 22 The wound should be covered properly with tree cotton and should be moistened repeatedly with sesame oil. Ghee should be given to the man to drink. His digestion being complete, he should be oiled and purged in accordance with the instructions specific to him.¹²⁰
- 23 And once healed and really come together, what is left of that slice of flesh

cussion of the disease परिपोट. Ḍalhaṇa went on to say that some believe that these verses were not composed by sages and, therefore, do not read them.

113 The order of verses 17 and 18 is reversed in Ḍalhaṇa's version (**vulgate**).

114 The version of 1.16.28b known to Ḍalhaṇa (**vulgate**) reads "bound, connected (baddham)" instead of "slice of flesh (vadhra)." This is a critical variant from the surgical point of view. If the slice remains connected, it will have a continuing blood supply. This is one of the effective techniques that so astonished surgeons witnessing a similar operation in Pune in the eighteenth century (**wuja-2003**).

115 Or 1.16.20 could be mean, '... off the cheek, it is fixed to the end of the nose, which has been scarified.' Unfortunately, the Sanskrit of the Nepalese version is not unambiguous on the important point of whether or not the flap of grafted skin remains connected to its original site on the cheek. However, Ḍalhaṇa (**vulgate**) clarified the meaning of the vulgate here by stating that one should supply the word "flesh" when reading "connected," thus indicating that he understood the flesh to be connected to the face.

116 Ḍalhaṇa noted that the two tubes should be made of reed or the stalk of the leaf of the castor-oil plant (on 1.16.21 (**vulgate**)). They should not be made of lead or betel nut because the weight will cause them to slip down.

117 The Sanskrit term उन्नामयित्वा in 1.16.21 is non-Pāṇinian.

118 For पत्ताङ्ग (sappanwood), there are manuscript variants पत्ताङ्ग (MS Kathmandu NAK 5-333) and पत्तङ्ग (MS Kathmandu NAK 1-1079). Also, MS Kathmandu KL 699 (f. 14r:1) has पत्ताङ्ग in a verse in 1.14 (cf. 1.14.36 (**vulgate**)). The text known to Ḍalhaṇa has पत्तङ्ग (1.16.29 (**vulgate**)) and this term is propagated in modern dictionaries.

119 Ḍalhaṇa glossed अञ्जन as रसाञ्जन, elixir salve (**vulgate**).

120 The expression स्वयथोपदेश is ungrammatical but supported in all available witnesses.

(vadhra) should then be trimmed.¹²¹ If it is reduced, however, one should make an effort to stretch it, and one should make its overgrown flesh smooth.¹²²

121 The vulgate transmission has lost the word वध्र and replaced it with अर्ध “half,” which makes little sense in this surgical context.

122 Ḍalhaṇa accepted a verse following this, 1.16.32 (**vulgate**), which pointed out that the procedure for joining the nose is similar to that of joining the lips without fusing the ducts. He noted that earlier teachers did not think this statement on the nose and lips was made by sages, but he included it because it was accepted by Jejjaṭa, Gayadāsa and others, although they did not comment on it because it was easy to understand. Cakrapāṇidatta also did not comment on this additional verse (**acar-1939**).

Sūtrasthāna 28: Unfavourable Prognosis in Patients with Sores

Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.¹²³

gosw-2011 studied the commentaries of Ḍalhaṇa and Cakrapāṇidatta on this and the following adhyāyas up to 32, focussing on the topic of omens (*ariṣṭa*). He concluded that both authors were influenced by the Indriyasthāna of the *Carakasamhitā* in their commentaries on this topic.¹²⁴

Translation

- 1 Thus, living creatures and their strength, complexion (*varṇa*) and energy (*ojas*) are rooted in food. That (food) depends on the six flavours (*rasa*). Thus, the flavours depend on substance (*dravya*), and substances depend on medicinal herbs. There are two kinds of them (herbs): stationary and mobile.¹²⁵

¹²³ [HIML](#): IA, 219.

¹²⁴ **gosw-2011**.

¹²⁵ 1.1.28 (vulgate), tr. **shar-1999**.

Nidānasthāna

Nidānasthāna 1: The Diagnosis of Diseases Caused by Wind

Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.¹²⁶

Translation

- 1 And now we shall explain the chapter about diagnosis of diseases caused by wind.¹²⁷
- 2
- 3 Suśruta asks after holding the feet of Dhanvantari who is the foremost of the upholders of righteousness and who emerged with nectar.
- 4 O King!¹²⁸ Divodāsa¹²⁹ the best of the orators! Let us know about the naturalized and disordered form of wind, its places in the body and types of the diseases caused by its contamination.
- 5–9ab On hearing his words, the venerable sage replied that being independent, constant and omnipresent this wind is revealed as self-born and supreme being. It is worshiped by all words and situated in the form of life-force in all beings. It is the cause of origin, continued existence and

126 [HIML](#): IA, 234. (**rube-1954b**) studied the wind doctrines in the *Carakasamhitā*.

127 Present chapter describes the diseases caused by vitiated wind and its mixing with other humours. In the medical term it is known as rheumatism.

128 H and N both mss read भूपते instead of कौपनै: in the vulgate.

129 <https://doi.org/10.20935/AL2992>

destruction of beings. It is unmanifest though manifests in/through action, cold, dry, light in weight, variable, moving horizontally with two attributes i.e., sound and tangibility¹³⁰. Having all chief qualities which are sattva, rajas and tamas but predominated by rajas. It has inconceivable power. It is inducer of humours¹³¹ and distinguished in the group of diseases¹³². *It moves quickly, moves again and again*, stays in stomach and intestine.

- 9cd Now, listen to the description of wind which moves inside the body.
- 10 Unvitiated wind makes possible objects of senses connect with intellect. It maintains a state of equilibrium between the humours, semen/7 fluids? and Gastric fluid and actions done by body, speech and intellect bring to one's right place.¹³³
- 11 Just as the five types of bile have been described based on their name, place and their actions, similarly, one type of air is of five types based on name, place, action and diseases.
- 12 Five types of wind:
1. Vital wind (*prāṇa*)
 2. *udāna*
 3. *samāna*
 4. *vyāna*
 5. *apāna*

above five types of wind remain in their equilibrium and hold the body¹³⁴.

130 According to Ḍalhaṇa, it has power to divide humours, fluids, feces etc. moving inside the body and it is the cause to the disease in the limbs. It carries humours, chyle, semen/7 fluids? and feces further in the body. The wind which is moving outside is holding the earth and body. (सा चास्य शक्तिः शरीरदोषमूत्रपुरीषादिविभागोऽवयवसंस्थानका(क)रणं दोषधातुमलसंवहनादिश्च, शरीराद्बहिस्तु संचरतो धरणीधारणादिः Su 1938:257)

131 Ḍalhaṇa suggests नेता=प्रेरक (Su 1938:257)

132 Ḍalhaṇa suggests राट्=राजते not राजा

133 According to Ḍalhaṇa, सम्पत्तिः=सम्पन्नता at 1.6.3 (Su1938:23). Ḍalhaṇa commented that Gayadāsa reads 'इन्द्रियार्थोपसंप्राप्तिः' but not written here because of being detailed. (गयदासाचार्यस्तु इमं श्लोकं 'इन्द्रियार्थोपसंप्राप्तिः' इत्यादि कृत्वा पठति, स च विस्तरभयान्न लिखितः) But H and N MSS suggest 'इन्द्रियार्थोपसम्पत्तिः'

134 Ḍalhaṇa suggests स्थान=साम्य, यापयन्ति=धारयन्ति (The manuscripts all read प्राणोदानः समानश्च व्यानोपानस्तथैव च . against the vulgate's प्राणोदानौ समानश्च व्यानश्चापान एव च . I think प्राणोदानौ, व्यानापानौ or व्यानश्चापान एव च should be read)

- 13–14ab The wind that flows through the mouth is called the vitality (prāṇa), which holds the body. It propels down food inside the stomach and engages with the gastric fluid¹³⁵. Unvitiated Vital wind mostly causes hiccups, asthma etc. diseases.
- 14cd–15 The wind which flows upwards in the body, the best among all five winds is called udāna. Singing, speech etc. individual things done by the same wind. Unvitiated udāna wind mostly causes diseases above the collar bone e.g., nose, eyes, head and ears¹³⁶.
- 16–17ab The samāna wind flows in stomach and duodenum. It helps gastric fluids in the digestion of food and separates the substances produced from it e.g., chyle, impurities, urine and feces. Unvitiated samāna wind causes diseases like a chronic enlargement of spleen (gulma), weak digestion, and diarrhea.
- 17cd–18 The vyāna wind moves inside the whole body and circulates chyle and expels sweat and blood outside the body. It helps in the movements of limbs in every way. Contaminated vyāna wind causes all diseases occurring in the body.
- 19–20ab Staying in the abdomen, the apāna wind propels wind of body, feces, urine, semen, womb and menstruation to come out of the body at their proper time. Contaminated apāna wind causes terrible diseases that occur in the bladder and anus.
- 20cd–21ab Contaminated vyāna and apāna wind causes defect of semen and gonorrhea, while simultaneous contamination of all the five winds surely leads to death.
- 21cd–22ab I shall therefore describe all the diseases caused by the contamination of winds staying in the various places of the body.
- 22cd–24ab Contaminated wind in the stomach causes disease like vomiting, loss of consciousness, fainting, thirst, heart-seizure, pain in lateral sides of stomach. It also causes rumbling of the bowels, acute pain, inflated belly, pain while discharging urine and feces, suppression of urine and pain in the loins.
- 24cd Contaminated wind residing in the ear causes loss of function of the senses.

¹³⁵ Ḍalhaṇa suggests head, chest, throat and nose as locations of prāṇa. (Sus1938:259) Gayadāsa suggests अग्नि for प्राण.

¹³⁶ Ḍalhaṇa suggests it also causes diseases like cough etc. (चकारादन्यादपि प्राणोदानौ, व्यानापानौ कासादीन् करोति .)

- 25–29 Residing in the skin,¹³⁷ contaminated wind causes discoloration of skin, throbbing of parts of the body, dryness, numbness, itching, pricking pain, swelling. It being inherent in the flesh of body causes swelling with pain and being inherent with the fat of the body causes swelling with slight pain but do not become wound.¹³⁸
- Residing in the artery it causes acute pain, contraction and filling up of the artery.¹³⁹ It stuns, vibrates and destroys¹⁴⁰ the muscle tissues by residing in the muscle. Residing in the joints it causes pain and swelling. Residing in the bone it causes fracture and dryness of bones which also cause to acute pain and, in the marrow, it dries up marrow which may never be cured. Residing in the semen it causes non-production and distorted production of semen.¹⁴¹
- 30–31ab Contaminated wind moves from the hand, foot, head, then it may be omnipresent or pervade the entire body of men and causes stiffness, convulsion, numbness and acute pain.
- 31cd–32ab Wind (5 types) mixed with other doṣas (bile etc.) in the places mentioned above produces mixed types of pains.
- 34cd–35ab Prāṇa wind surrounded by bile causes vomiting and burning sensation, by phlegm it causes weakness, exhaustion, laziness and bad taste.
- 35cd–36ab Udāna wind surrounded by bile causes loss of consciousness, stupor, dizziness and fatigue, by phlegm it causes absence of perspiration, slowness of digestion, sensation of coldness.
- 36cd–37ab Samāna wind surrounded by bile causes perspiration, a burning sensation, heat and stupor, association with phlegm it causes erection in urine, feces and limbs.
- 37cd–38ab Apāna wind associated with bile causes a burning sensation, heat and the voiding of blood with urine, with phlegm it causes a feeling of heaviness in the lower part of the body and coldness.

137 Ḍalhaṇa and Gayadāsa both suggest त्वक्=रस. Gayadāsa explained that chyle stays in the skin and therefore, in the verse त्वक्स्थ should be read as रसस्थ as we read secondary meaning in the sentences like गङ्गायां घोषः.

138 The MS H does not read व्रणांश्च रक्तगो ग्रन्थीन् सशूलान् मांससंश्रितः . against the vulgate. (**vulgate**).

139 According to Ḍalhaṇa सिराकुञ्चनं is also known as कुटिला सिरा (**vulgate**)

140 Ḍalhaṇa and Gayadāsa both suggest the meaning of हन्ति for being not capable of both stretching and contraction. सन्धिगतः संधीन् हन्ति प्रसारणाकुञ्चनयोरसामर्थ्यं करोति (**vulgate**)

...

141 Ḍalhaṇa and Gayadāsa both suggest that a distorted production विकृतां प्रवृत्तिम् is too fast, too slow, knotty and discolored.

- 38cd–39ab Vyāna wind surrounded by bile causes a burning sensation, tossing of the limbs and fatigue, by phlegm it causes stiffening limbs, uddanḍaka? and pain in the swelling.
- 40–41 Persons who are of delicate nature, follow faulty diet and lifestyle, ? also afflicted with intoxicating drinks, sexual enjoyment, exercise causes vitiation of wind and blood.??
- 42 Riding elephant, horse and camel, lifting great weights, consuming vegetables which are pungent, hot, sour, alkali and being frequently distressed situation causes contamination of wind.
- 43–44 Blood flowing in the body blocks the passage of contaminated wind which moves quickly in the body. Excessively irritated wind–being contaminated by wind and dominance of wind, it is called वातरक्त Gout¹⁴².
- 45–46 Vātarakta causes – pricking pain, dryness, loos of sensation in the feet. Contaminated Bile mixed with blood causes sharp burning sensation, excessive heat and soft swelling with red color in the feet. Contaminated Phlegm mixed with the blood causes itching in the feet. It makes feet white, cold, dry, thick and hard. All defects ¹⁴³ in the blood contaminated by humours (wind, bile, phlegm) manifest their symptoms in the feet.
- 48 This disease spreads all over the body like rat poison by staying in feet or sometimes hands.
- 49 Gout spreads in the knee and the skin bursts and starts bleeding makes it incurable. It is mitigatable if it is of a year's old.
- 50–51 When vitiated wind enters in the all arteries it causes quickly convulsions again and again and because of frequent contractions (*ākṣepa*) it is called convulsions (*ākṣepaka*).
- 52–56 Because in this situation a person often sees darkness and fall, it calls spasmodic contraction (*apatānaka*) ¹⁴⁴ . If wind mixed with phlegm stays excessively in the arteries, it stiffens body like a staff and it is called दण्डापतानकः epilepsy with convulsions. Vitiated wind entered in the arteries and bends the body like a bow, it is called धनुःस्तम्भ Tetanus.

¹⁴² In the medical term वातरक्त is known as Gout. Cakrapāṇi called it आढ्यरोगः Carakas-aṃhitā sū.14.18 and ci.28.66

¹⁴³ Gayadāsa suggests सर्वे दुष्टाः शोणितं चापि nominative plural instead of locative singular.

¹⁴⁴ Gayadāsa accepted the Nepalese reading ताम्यते which vulgate does not read. Gayadāsa gives definition of अपतानक as येनापताम्यते means a situation in that a person sees the dark.

When vitiated wind accumulated in the regions of finger, ankle, abdomen, heart, chest, and throat swiftly attack on the group of vain and ligaments, it gets a person's eyes stuck, chin stuns, side breaks and vomiting phlegm he moves inwards like a bow and this situation is known as emprosthotonos (*antarāyāma*). When vitiated wind attacks on outside ligaments, body of a person will stretch forward like a bow. In this situation, if the chest, hip or thigh break, wise men call it incurable.

- 58 Aggravated phlegm and bile mixed with wind or only vitiated wind causes fourth convulsive disease due to trauma.
- 59 Convulsions due to miscarriage, excessive bleeding, and injury are incurable ¹⁴⁵.
- 60–62 When excessively agitated and strong wind flows in the arteries which spread downward, upward, and sideways, it loses the joints and kills the other side of body. The best of physicians calls it paralysis (*pakṣāghāta*). ¹⁴⁶ Then half of his entire body becomes inefficient and unconscious. Afflicted by wind he suddenly falls or dies.
- 62.1 Bile integrates with wind causes burning sensation, affliction, and infatuation. When it integrates with phlegm causes coldness, morbid swelling, and heaviness. ¹⁴⁷.
- 63 A paralysis (*pakṣāghāta*) caused by wind ¹⁴⁸ is curable with most difficulty. It becomes curable when caused by bile and phlegm mix with the wind. It becomes incurable when caused by the loss of bodily constituents.
- 64–66 Verses from 64–66 are not found in the Nepalese manuscripts. These verses discuss the term spasmodic contradiction (*āpatantraka*) which is the same as अपतानक. Ḍalhaṇa commented on ni.1.64–66 (Su 1938:267) that because of having the similar condition in both situations, some scholars do not read the अपतन्त्रक. In the verse ni.1.59 Ḍalhaṇa commented that the आक्षेपक and अपतानक is same (Su 1938:266) and again

¹⁴⁵ According to Ḍalhaṇa convulsion (*ākṣepaka*) is also known as अपतानक (Su 1938:266). He further mentions that even if fortunately, it is cured, it cripples the limb.

¹⁴⁶ In the ca.6.28.55 पक्षाघात is described as monoplegia (*ekāṅgaroga*). In that case it damages one of the limbs. In the medical terms paralysis (*apakṣāghāta*) is known as hemiplegia.

¹⁴⁷ This verse is not available in vulgate. It deals with the symptoms when bile and phlegm mix with the wind. It is already discussed in su.2.1.38.

¹⁴⁸ Here the term शुद्धवात suggests the meaning of the wind that is devoid of bile and phlegm.

- he suggested that the अपतानक and अपतन्त्रक both are similar condition. Therefore, आक्षेपक, अपतानक and अपतन्त्रक should be the same. Gay-adāsa further commented that the Caraka has not read आक्षेपक as अपतानक and therefore described the अपतन्त्रक separately (Su 1938:267).
- 67 This verse also not found in the Nepalese Manuscripts. The verse describes rigidity of neck (*manyāsthambha*). According to Ḍalhaṇa, rigidity of neck is a prior symptom of spasmodic contradiction.
- 68–72 By speaking very loudly, eating hard foods, excessively laughing and yawning, lifting heavy loads and sleeping in an awkward position, vitiated wind lodges into face painfully and produces spasm of the jaw-bones (*ardita*) disease. In that case, half of the face and neck become curved, head trembles, speech hindrances, deformity occurs in the eyes, eyebrows and cheeks.¹⁴⁹ Experts in diseases call this disease spasm of the jaw-bones (*ardita*).
- 73 Spasm of the jawbones cannot be cured when it stays in a person for three years, who is very weak, stays without blinking, trembles, and constantly speaks gibberish.
- 74 Arteries of Heel and toes stricken by vitiated wind prevents stretching of thighs. This disease is known as sciatica (*grdhrasī*).
- 75 Arteries which run to the tips of fingers from behind the roots of the upper arm affected by vitiated wind terminates all activities of arms and back. This disease is called paralysis of arms and back (*viśvañci*).¹⁵⁰
- 76 Vitiated wind and blood in the joint of knee causes synovitis of knee joint (*koṣṭukaśīrṣa*). In this extremely painful situation, the shape of swelling in knee joints seems like a head of Jackal.
- 77 Vitiated wind resides in the waist attacks on the arteries of thigh causes limpness (*khañja*) and when it attacks on both the thighs a person becomes lame (*paṅgu*).
- 78 A person who trembles at the beginning of walking or walks limping and whose foot joint has become loose is called lathyrism (*kalāyakhāñja*).
- 79 Vitiated wind residing in the ankle-joint causes pain when one steps on uneven ground. This disease occurs is called वातकण्टक.

¹⁴⁹ Ḍalhaṇa suggests नेत्रादीनाम् इत्यादि शब्दात् भूगण्डादि उपसङ्ग्रहः

¹⁵⁰ Both the MSS N and H read विश्वञ्चि instead of the vulgate reading विश्वाची. There is no such word found in other Āyurveda texts.

- 80 Vitiated wind mixed with bile and blood cause burning sensation in feet. It should be declared as burning sensation in feet (*pādadaḥa*).
- 81 A person whose feet tingle and become insensible due to vitiation of phlegm and wind is called पादहर्ष.
- 82 Vitiated wind lying in the shoulder dries the shoulder joints and it is called अंसशोष. It also bends the arteries of shoulder, and this disease is called अवबाहुक.¹⁵¹
- 83 Vitiated wind singly or mixed with phlegm cover the channel of ears causes deafness.
- 84 Vitiated wind saturated with phlegm covering the arteries which conduct the sound of speech makes a person inactive (*akriya*), dumb (*mūka*). He mumbles (*mimmira*) through the nose and stammers (*gadgad*).¹⁵²
- 85 Vitiated wind penetrating into the cheekbones, temporal bones, head and neck causes piercing pain in the ears. It is called ear-ache (*karnaśūla*).¹⁵³
- 86–87 The pain that arises from the bladder or feces goes down as if it were breaking the rectum and..... ? is called तूनी, whereas the pain, rising upward from the rectum extending up to the region of the intestines, is called प्रतितूनी.
- 88–89 Retention of vitiated wind inside abdomen causes distension of the stomach and flatulence and intense pain and rumbling inside, is called tympanites (*ādhmāna*). Vitiated wind mixed with phlegm causes प्रत्याध्मान. It rises in the stomach and causes pain in the heart and sides.¹⁵⁴
- 90–91 A knotty stone-like tumour caused by wind appearing in the stomach having an elevated shape and stretched upward direction which obstructing the passage of faeces and urine should be known as वाताष्टीला. A tumour of similar shape rose obliquely in the abdomen obstructing the passage of wind, faeces and urine should be known as प्रत्यष्टीला.

151 Ḍalhaṇa and Gayadāsa both have defined two diseases i.e., अंसशोष and अवबाहुक respectively.

152 Nepalese Manuscripts read मिर्मिर instead of the Vulgate's reading मिन्मिण. Dictionary of MW suggests the meaning of मिर्मिर = having fixed unwinking eyes which is not relevant to the disease of tongue.

153 In the medical terms, this disease is known as Otitis.

154 There's an addition in MS N. नाभेरधस्तात् संजातः संचारी यदि वाऽचलः

Śārīrasthāna

Śārīrasthāna 2: On Semen and Menstrual Fluid

Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.¹⁵⁵ Das (2003: chs 6–8) also studied topics of this chapter.

Conceptual background

Das (2003: ch. 13) provides an overview of the conceptual background of ayurveda on the topics discussed in this adhyāya. In brief ...

Translation

- 1 We shall now explain the anatomy that is the purification of sperm (*śukra*) and blood (*śoṇita*).
- 3 Semen (*retas*)¹⁵⁶ is incompetent to produce offspring if it is [characterized by] wind, bile, phlegm, blood (*śoṇita*),¹⁵⁷ decomposition (*kuṇapa*), lumps (*granthi*),¹⁵⁸ stinking pus (*pūtipūya*), low volume (*kṣīṇa*), urine,

¹⁵⁵ [HIML](#): IA, 244–246.

¹⁵⁶ The Nepalese version has -रेतांसि “semen” (in the plural) as the subject of the sentence: “seeds are unable to produce offspring....” In the vulgate, -रेतसः is a masculine bahuvrīhi, making “men whose semen has...” the subject of the sentence.

¹⁵⁷ Note that the list begins with the four entities, wind, bile, phlegm and blood, perhaps hinting at a four-humour system (see Wujastyk 2000: 485–486).

¹⁵⁸ Contemporary medicine understands that normal ejaculate contains coagula which,

JG in the light of your reflections, I removed “women’s fertile”. I’ve put śārīram back in.

JG could you provide a standard citation reference for this information?

or feces.

JG translation

- 4 When the disfunction is caused by wind, there is a colour and a type of pain that typically goes with wind problems; if caused by bile the colour and the pain are typical of bile afflictions; if caused by phlegm the discoloration and suffering are characteristic for phlegm disease; and if caused by some bleeding (*śonita*) there will be a discoloration due to blood and a sensation similar to that when there is a bile affliction. Moreover when caused by blood (*rakta*) there is the smell of decomposition. Phlegm with wind causes the appearance of lumps, bile with bleeding (*śonita*) causes the appearance of foul-smelling pus (*pūtipūya*).
if caused by both bile and wind troubles the volume gets depleted; when there is some episode of despair a smell of urine and faeces will occur. Some of these sperm abnormalities can be treated, e.g. cases of foul-smelling sperm, sperm containing an abnormal amount of clotting lumps, and when it reeks of pus and causes excruciating pain. However, when sperm contains urine or faeces there is no treatment.¹⁵⁹
- 5 Moreover, in the period of about ten days following the onset of the menses - when the woman is receptive to becoming pregnant - the sperm can be vitiated by any of the three pathologies that may occur during the first quarter of the menstrual cycle, either separately or by two or three of them or even all three together but this will not necessarily lead to subfertility. Rather it is the pain caused or the discoloration of the sperm itself that suggest one of these afflictions. Among these, the kind which shows decomposition, or coagula, or putrid pus is incurable. The other types, however, can be treated.
- 6 Such are the facts. A smart professional getting the most out of his professional competence will, normally speaking, be able to treat the first three among these sperm pathologies. What is needed therefore

however, dissolve after about half an hour. But coagula that do not dissolve may sometimes be a sign of an underlying disorder.

¹⁵⁹ Note that the above characterizations presuppose the direct inspection of an ejaculate. The process of collection is not described in the sources.

- can be either lubrication, or making the tissues exude or any other tricks of the trade, such as something like an enemas or an instillation.
- 6A When the sperm is negatively affected by wind disorders, one should applicate an oily enema containing Bengal quince and Indian kudzu.
- 6B One could also consider administering an oily preparation, well-cooked and medicated with simple deodar drenched in honey, in the form of an enema.
- 6C One can also make the patient drink clarified butter finished with pomegranate, citron fruit, rock salt, a caustic (*kṣāra*), and two kinds of salt.
- 6D When sperm disfunction is due to bile issues, one can prescribe application of a preparation based on the milky juice of plants cooked with honey or else sharply tasting betel leaves in milk or curd.
- 6E One could apply also a salve of axlewood and sal into the vagina.
- 6F Or apply externally an oily preparation of well-cooked honey.
- 6G Of course that oily preparation could also be applied in the form of an enema.
- 6H One can also make him swallow a beverage of clarified butter finished with the “five roots”: nightshade, betel, moonseed in honey, dog’s tooth and sugarcane stalks.
- 6I If the sperm is afflicted because disturbances in phlegm, one can consider an oily ghee-based preparation with adstringent leaves of the golden shower tree.
- 6J The oil processed as a medicated decoction of long pepper, honey and false black pepper should be administered as an anointment but similarly also in the form of an enema.
- 6K One should try a solution of cooled-down clarified butter, compounded with the juice of basil, Indian gooseberry, long pepper and stone-breaker plant in case of kidney gravel disease.
- 6L Here are some more verses.
- 7 In case the sperm shows signs of decomposition, one should make the patient drink a medicated fluid containing dhātaki flowers, cutch-tree, pomegranate and arjuna tree bark.
- 8 In case of apparent disintegration of the sperm, he should drink clarified butter with heart of sāl. Moreover in case of lumps and clots, he should even eat a preparation of ashes obtained after burning of a fig-tree.
- 9 In case the sperm appears purulent, a mixture of mangrove canon ball

I have replaced the plant-names with entries from my plant database.

in some food leftovers or anything else should be prepared. When the sperm is depleted, one should perform these instructions straight away as soon as they have been explained.

- 10 One should make the patient drink ghee with citra, koshira and hingu by way of an antidote. A wise person should then perform one by one the six oleation processes on his own body.

Cikitsāsthāna

Cikitsāsthāna 4: On the Treatment of Wind Diseases

Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.¹⁶⁰

Translation

- 1 Now we shall describe the treatment of wind diseases.
- 2
- 3 When the wind enters the stomach and one vomits as a result, one should sequentially administer the six-bearing (षड्वरण) remedy with cool water for seven nights.¹⁶¹
- 4 The remedy constituting of leadwort, ??, velvet-leaf, ??, Himalayan monkshood, and myrobalan cures serious diseases and is called the six-bearing (षड्वरण).
- 5 When the wind has entered the abdomen (पक्वाशय), one should treat it with evacuation of the bowels (विरेचन) using an unctuous substance. One should also treat it with cleansing enemas and excessively salty foods.¹⁶²

¹⁶⁰ HIML: IA, 265–266.

¹⁶¹ The vulgate has the reading छर्दयित्वा which means "after making [him] vomit". Thus, vomiting is a part of the treatment. Whereas in the H manuscript, vomiting is the symptom of the ailment that needs to be cured.

¹⁶² In H, the reading प्रासाः should be read as प्राशाः for it to mean "foods". Otherwise, प्रासाः means "throwing/discharging" or "darts/spears".

This is a change we should make in the edition.

You need not give all the grammatical details about śrotādi. Assume you are talking to knowledgeable Sanskrit scholars.

- 6 Once the wind has entered the lower belly, a cleansing enema is recommended. And, on the wind having entered the ears, etc., the wind-slayer sequence should be executed.¹⁶³
- 7 On the wind having entered the skin, flesh, and blood, one should rub oil on the body (अभ्यङ्ग), apply a poultice on the body (उपनाह), massage the body (मर्दन), smear ointments on the body (आलेपन), and do blood-letting (असृग्विमोक्षण).
- 8 On the wind having entered the ligaments, joints, and bones, the wise [physician] should employ the application of an unctuous poultice (स्नेहोपनाह), cauterization (अग्निकर्म), binding (बन्धन), and massage.
- 9 On the wind being concealed within the bones, it (wind) should be beaten by churning those body parts with hands. A strong physician should then insert a narrow tube within the bone and suck out the wind completely from the bone.¹⁶⁴
- 10 On the wind having entered the semen, one should perform the treatment for the defects of the semen.¹⁶⁵
- 11 The intelligent physician should conquer the wind situated within the whole body by immersion, *kuṭī*, *karṣa*, *prastara*, oil massage, enema, and blood-letting.¹⁶⁶ Or, in case of wind situated in one part of the body and

163 In the H manuscript reading "श्रोतादि...", there appears to be a double sandhi. See *Nidānasthāna* Ch. 1 verse 12 for another example of double sandhi. Furthermore, the syllable in H after "चानिल" is not clear. It could be "ह्य" or "हा" or perhaps something else. The reading in the vulgate for this syllable is "हा". Thus, the complete word becomes "अनिलहा" which means "the slayer of wind". This makes proper sense in this verse. We have considered this reading ("अनिलहा") for our translation.

164 The H manuscript has the reading अस्थीनि which is the accusative plural form of अस्थि. The accusative case does not make sense here. The vulgate has the reading अस्थनि, the locative singular form of अस्थि. This reading makes proper sense in the verse. Therefore, we have accepted the vulgate reading अस्थनि for translating this verse.

165 Ḍaḥaṇa comments (vulgate) that this treatment for the defects of the semen is mentioned [earlier] as the शुक्रशोणितशुद्धि, the purification of the semen and the blood. This is the *Śārīrasthāna* Ch. 2, शुक्रशोणितविशुद्धि. The second hemistich of this verse is not a part of this sentence but is a part of the sentence in the next verse. That is because the remedies described in this hemistich are appropriate for the disease described in the first hemistich of the next verse.

166 In H, the last syllable नि of the compound word does not make sense. The vulgate has the compound word ending with भि: which makes proper sense. For making a meaningful translation, we have accepted the vulgate reading here. Furthermore, Ḍaḥaṇa describes the treatments *kuṭī*, *karṣū*, and *prastara* in his commentary in (vulgate). Regarding blood-letting, he comments there that because the verse has the plural form

- contained within it, the intelligent physician should cure it with horns.
- 12 On the wind having mingled with phlegm, bile, and blood, the physician should treat it with non-hostile remedies. However, on the wind being inactive, the physician should perform blood-letting many times.
- 13 [On the wind being inactive], one should also lick the milk of the *pancamūlī* accompanied with salt and ??¹⁶⁷ mixed with oil, and one should indeed consume meat soup made sour with fruit.¹⁶⁸
- 14-15 Or, one should consume cereal soup with a good amount of ghee, or the food that is beneficial and that curtails the wind. However, cottony jujube, etc.¹⁶⁹ with a wind-removing remedy combined with all sour substances and with the meat from a water body along with lots of unction, lukewarm¹⁷⁰ and salty, is well known as *Sālvala*.
- 16ab For patients with diseases of the wind, one should always apply this (*sālvala*) as a poultice.
- 16cd-18ab Whether a body part has become contracted or bent, is troubled by a [wind] disease, or has become numb, one should tightly bind it with a long strap made of tree bark, cloth, or wool [after applying the *sālvala* poultice]. Or, after massaging the affected body part and applying the *śālvala*¹⁷¹ poultice on it, one should insert it into a sack made of the hide of a cat, mongoose, *udra*¹⁷², or deer.
- 18cd-19 Vomiting and *nasya* done under the supervision of an expert physician alleviates the wind that has entered the chest, loins, shoulders, or the nape of the neck. *Śirobasti* and blood-letting alleviate the wind situated in the head.
- 20-21ab In that (*śirobasti*), the oil should be held carefully for a duration of one thousand *mātrās*. Enema (बस्ति) alone curtails the wind that is situated throughout the whole body or in one part. This is just as the wind [curtails] its force.¹⁷³

सिरामोक्षैः, five blood vessels have to be drained of blood if the wind is not pacified by oil massage, etc.

167 *Āgāradhūma* seems to be a plant as seen in Monier Williams' Sanskrit dictionary.

168 The vulgate reading दिह्यात् (should apply) totally changes the meaning.

169 For grammatical accuracy, there needs to be a *visarga* at the end of the word काकोल्यादि.

170 Perhaps सुखोष्णम् is an indeclinable. But, it could also be a grammatical inaccuracy where it should have a *visarga* at the end: सुखोष्णः.

171 This seems to be the correct spelling as against the unclarity in the earlier verses.

172 some aquatic animal

173 The last four words in H, तस्य वेगम् इवानिलः do not make sense in the context.

Perhaps
kalka here
could also
mean the
Terminalia
Bellerica
(विभीतक).

- 21cd-26 Oils, perspiration, oil massage, enema, unctuous purging of the bowels, *śirobasti*, oiling the head, unctuous smoke, gargling with lukewarm water, *nasya*, unctuous paste, milks, meats¹⁷⁴, soups, oils¹⁷⁵, any unctuous substance, unctuous and salty meals that are made sour by fruits, bathing with lukewarm water, massages, saffron, ??, cassia cinnamon, costus, cardamom, crape jasmine, garments made of silk, wool, and fur, soft cotton garments, inner rooms with sunlight, no wind flow, and a soft bed, taking the warmth of fire, and celibacy, etc. are to be collectively employed for patients with wind diseases.
- 27 One should take *akṣa* quantities of unguent pastes¹⁷⁶ of turpeth,¹⁷⁷ ??, ??, ??, ??, and embelia, a Bengal quince fruit equivalent measure of ??-root and ??, two *pātra* quantities of both *triphalā*-decoction¹⁷⁸ and yogurt, and one *pātra* measure of ghee.¹⁷⁹ One should mix these ingredients all at once and cook the mixture properly. This (resultant) is ??-ghee. Unctuous purging of bowels is prescribed for treating wind disorders.¹⁸⁰ This procedure of making ??-ghee should also be referred for making ??-ghee and ??-ghee.¹⁸¹
- 28 One should collect the wooden logs of the instruments that have been used for a long time for extracting oil from sesame seeds. One should then have them chopped into very tiny pieces and then pound those pieces. Next, one should put them in a big vessel, submerge them in water, and boil them. Thereafter, one should collect the oil from the surface of the water with a goblet or by hand. Thereafter, one should properly cook wind-alleviating herbs with this oil that was effectively

174 The plural indicates milk and meat from various animals.

175 This is the second occurrence of the word *सेहा*: in this sentence. This seems to be an anomaly.

176 कल्क also means an unguent paste. Refer to Apte's dictionary.

177 In H, perhaps it should have been त्रिवृद् instead of तृवृत्.

178 त्रिफलारस is here taken to mean a decoction of *triphalā*.

179 The exact measurements of *akṣa* and *pātra* are given in Ḍalhaṇa's commentary in *vulgate*.

180 It should be understood here that the unctuous substance to be used for purging the bowels is the ??-ghee.

181 अशोक and रम्यक are the Ashoka and Chinaberry respectively.

cooked.¹⁸² This is the *anutaila* (अनुतैल)¹⁸³ that is mentioned in wind disorders. It is called *anutaila* because it is produced from tiny oily objects.¹⁸⁴

- 29 Alternatively, one should burn a great amount of ??-wood on the ground for one night. When the fire gets extinguished the ash should be removed. Then, the ground that is relieved of the fire should be soaked with a hundred pots of oil cooked with ??, ??, and other herbs, and left in that condition for one night. Thereafter, one should take all the earth that is oily¹⁸⁵ in a big vessel and totally cover it with water.¹⁸⁶ The oil that rises up in that vessel should be taken out with both hands and kept nicely covered. Thereafter, one should properly cook that oil for as long as possible¹⁸⁷ with one thousand parts of each of the following—a decoction of wind-alleviating herbs, meat soup, milk, and *kāñjika*¹⁸⁸—and thus prepare the *sahasra-pāka* (that which is cooked with thousands). The admixture added to the oil contains the *hemavata* herbs¹⁸⁹, herbs of the southern region, Withania, and other wind-alleviating herbs.

While the oil is being cooked, conchshells should be blown loudly, umbrellas should be held, huge drums should be resounded, and whisk fans should be waved.¹⁹⁰ Thereafter, the perfectly cooked oil should be poured into a golden or silver pot and stored. This *sahasra-pāka* is the oil possessing undiminishing potency and is fit for

182 In H, the word दन्तप्रतीवायं in the compound word वातघ्नौषधदन्तप्रतीवायं does not appear to make sense. Perhaps the syllable य should be प, thus making the word प्रतीवापं that refers to an admixture of substances to medicines either during or after decoction. Refer to Monier-Williams's Sanskrit dictionary.

183 The न् should be read ण्.

184 The word अनु in the compound word अनुतैलद्रव्येभ्यः should be read अणु.

185 In H, the word यावन् should have been यावान्.

186 The reading in H, कटाहेभ्यः सिंचेत्, does not make sense here. Thus, we have accepted the vulgate reading कटाहे ऽभ्यासिंचेत् for the translation.

187 The phrase "यावता कालेन शक्यता पक्वम्" appears as a part of a new sentence in H. But, we should take it to be a part of the earlier sentence for it to make proper sense.

188 Ḍaḥaṇa comments (**vulgate**) that the word अम्ल here means काञ्जिक which is the water drained after boiling rice and is a little fermented. Refer Monier Willams's Sanskrit Dictionary.

189 The word should be हैमवताः as in the vulgate. It means "the herbs of the snowy mountains". Ḍaḥaṇa comments (**vulgate**) that हैमवताः refers to the herbs that grow in the northern region.

190 These activities are a symbolic way of showing reverence.

kings.

Thus, that which is cooked with a thousand parts is called *sahasra-pāka*.

- 30 One should collect fresh leaves of castor oil tree, ??, ??, weaver's beam tree, Indian beech, ??, and leadwort.¹⁹¹ These leaves should be completely pounded along with salt in a mortar. This mixture should be put in a pot filled with oil¹⁹². It (pot) should be smeared¹⁹³ with cow-dung. Thereafter, the pot should be heated.¹⁹⁴ This (resultant) is the *patra-lavaṇa* (leaf-salt) that is mentioned in wind disorders.

Euphorbia
An-
tiquorum
(Antique
spurge)

- 31 In the same way, one should pound the stalks of ?? and eggplants smeared with salt and fill a pot with it.¹⁹⁵ In that pot, one should add ghee, oil, fat, and marrow. Then, one should smear it¹⁹⁶ and heat it as earlier. This (resultant) is the *sneha-lavaṇa* (fat-salt) that is mentioned in wind disorders.
- 32 One should collect the fresh fruits, roots, leaves, and branches of all the twenty [herbs]: ??, ??, Tellicherry bark, Bengal quince, purple calotropis, ??, ??, ??, ??, ??, ??, ??, ??, ??, ??, Indian beech, ??, poison berry, ??, marking-nut tree, ??, ??, One should then mix them with salt and heat them as earlier.¹⁹⁷ The oil on top should be poured out completely with the salty mixture intact [at the bottom]. This mixture should be cooked thoroughly. The admixture added to it consists of long pepper, etc. This (resultant) is the salt called *kalyāṇaka* that is mentioned in wind disorders and in meals and drinks for the patients troubled by *plihāgnisaṃga*, indigestion, loss of appetite, and piles.

Thus ends the fourth chapter on the treatment of wind diseases.

191 In H, the ending नाम् should be णाम् due to sandhi.

192 सेहघट can also mean a pot filled with ghee

193 The H or vulgate do not specify with words that it is the pot to be smeared. But, it is to be understood.

194 The word दाहयेत् usually refers to burning, but sometimes it can refer to heating.

195 In H, there should be a *visarga* after लवणा.

196 As earlier, the pot should be smeared with cow-dung.

197 It is to be understood that all these fresh branches, leaves, fruits, and roots of the herbs should be completely pounded together with salt. The mixture should then be put into a pot filled with oil or ghee. The pot should be smeared with cow-dung and then heated.

Cikitsāsthāna 5: On the Treatment of Serious Wind Diseases

Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.¹⁹⁸

Translation

- 1 Now we shall describe the treatment of serious wind diseases.
- 2
- 3 One group says that the blood afflicted by wind (wind-blood) (*vāta-rakta*) is of two types: spreading out over a surface (उत्तान) and deep (अवगाढ).¹⁹⁹ However, this is not correct.²⁰⁰ Why? Just as leprosy, after spreading over a surface it (afflicted blood) becomes deeply situated. Therefore, its being of two different types is refuted.
- 4 When the wind is aggravated by fighting a strong person, etc.²⁰¹, one's corrupted blood caused by eating heavy or hot food before the last meal is digested blocks the path of the aggravated wind. It then combines with the wind and simultaneously creates pain due to the wind-blood.

¹⁹⁸ HIML: IA, 266.

¹⁹⁹ Ḍalhaṇa comments (**vulgate**) that उत्तान refers to being situated in the skin and flesh, and अवगाढ refers to being situated internally.

²⁰⁰ In H, the word तन् should be तत्.

²⁰¹ These factors that aggravate the wind are mentioned in *Nidānasthāna*, Ch. 12, text 6.

This [condition] is called wind-blood (*vāta-śoṇita*). At first, it is situated in the hands and feet.²⁰² Later, it spreads throughout the body. Its early forms are pricking pain, burning, itching, ulcer, trembling²⁰³, roughness of the skin, pulsation in the blood vessels, tendons, and tubular vessels²⁰⁴, weakness of the thighs, as well as the sudden appearance of dark brown, tawny, or red spots on the soles of the feet, fingers, ankles, and wrists. The disease becomes fully manifest in the person who does not undertake the means to revert the disease or applies a wrong treatment. Its symptoms have been mentioned. Among them, weakness occurs for the one who does not counter the disease.

- 5 Generally, wind-blood occurs in those who are very delicate, those who eat the wrong foods and enjoy improperly, those who are fat, and even in those who indulge in pleasure.
- 6 In that regard, one should treat the patient who is not degenerating due to wasting of life air, thirst, fever, unconsciousness, dyspnea, trembling, and loss of appetite, is not oppressed by the contraction [of limbs], is strong, composed, and has the means.
- 7 In the treatment, at the beginning itself one should do blood-letting of the wind-affected body part little by little and more than once. That (slow blood-letting) is because of the danger of further aggravation of wind. One should avoid doing blood-letting of the part hardened or weakened by excessive wind.²⁰⁵ Thereafter, one should make the patient do the remedies of vomiting, etc. If the wind that is mixed [with blood] or separated is very aggravated then one should make him consume aged ghee or goat-milk. Or, [one can give him] half a measure of oil added with an *akṣa* of liquorice and cooked with hare foot uraria²⁰⁶, or the oil that is sweetened by sugar and honey and cooked with dried ginger and bulrush. Or, one should boil milk with an eight times volume of the decoction of the following herbs: beautyberry, ??, ??, hare foot uraria²⁰⁷, ??, wild asparagus, ??, and ??. This milk should then be used to cook oil with the admixture of pastes of ??, ??, ??, ??, deodar,

202 In H, the word तन् should be तत्.

203 In H, there should not have been the स् after स्तम्भ.

204 In addition to blood vessels, it would also include the nerves.

205 In H, the reading अम्लान does not make sense given the context. Therefore, we have accepted the vulgate reading म्लान for the translation.

206 Dalhaṇa glosses (**vulgate**) *śṛgālavinnā* as *pṛśniparṇī*.

207 According to Dalhaṇa, *śṛgālavinnā* is *pṛśniparṇī*.

sweet flag, and ???. This (resultant) should be utilised in drinks, etc. Or, one should use the oil that is cooked with a decoction of wild asparagus, prickly chaff-flower²⁰⁸, ??, liquorice, giant potato, heart-leaf sida, country mallow, and ??²⁰⁹, with the admixture of cottony jujube, etc. Or, one should use the heart-leaf sida-oil that is cooked as *śatapāka*.²¹⁰ Or, [the affected body part] should be moistened with milk that is boiled with the roots of wind-alleviating herbs, or it should be moistened with sour things.²¹¹ In that regard, five remedies prepared with milk are described. For preparing a poultice, milk should be cooked in ghee, oil, fat, marrow, and *dugdha*²¹² separately with each of these powdered grains or pulses—barley, wheat, sesame, mung beans, or green gram—that is mixed with unctuous pastes of cottony jujube, purple roscoe, ??, ??, heart-leaf sida, country mallow, hare foot uraria²¹³, ??, ??, sugar, bulrush²¹⁴, ??, and sweet flag. Or, the essence of unctuous fruits²¹⁵ can be used as a poultice. Or, a *veśavāra*²¹⁶ prepared from the flesh of a fat *cilicima* fish²¹⁷ can be used instead. Or, [one can use] the poultice contain-

208 Ḍalhaṇa glosses (**vulgate**) *mayūra* as *apāmārga*.

209 Ḍalhaṇa comments (**vulgate**) that sacred grass, ??, ??, ??, ??, and ?? are called *ṛṇa* (grass).

210 *Śatapāka* seems to be an oil that is prepared with a hundred parts of some things similar to *sahasrapāka* that is prepared with one thousand parts of some herbs. Refer *Cikiti-sāsthāna* Ch. 4 text 29 for the preparation of *sahasrapāka*.

211 Ḍalhaṇa comments (**vulgate**) that the sour things (*amla*) are ??, ??, ??-water, etc. *Surā* is some kind of liquor, *sauvīra* is perhaps the fruit of the jujube tree, and *tuṣa* is perhaps *Terminalia Bellerica* (विभीतक).

212 In the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*, the word for milk is *kṣīra* or *payas* but not *dugdha*. Therefore, the word *dugdha* here can mean the sap of plants or something that is extracted.

213 *śṛṅgālavinnā*

214 For *kaśerukā*

215 Ḍalhaṇa comments (**vulgate**) that the unctuous fruits mentioned here are sesame, castor, flax, ??, etc.

216 In H, the reading वैशवारो does not make sense. It should have been वेशवारो, as shown in the vulgate, which is the reading we have accepted here.

Veśavāra is boneless meat minced, steamed, and added with spices, ghee, etc. Refer to 'Ayurveda Medical Dictionary' by Ranganayakulu Potturu.

Perhaps the word वैशवार is an earlier form of the word वेशवार.

217 H has the compound word नलपीनमत्स्य. नलमीन is a particular fish known as *cilicima* (चिलिचिमः). See *Amarakośa*. Also, if the name is नलमत्स्य then the word पीन (fat) within the name is not according to proper Sanskrit. But, it can be allowed because the word मत्स्य (fish), instead of being a part of the name, can be considered to mean fish in general and thus the word पीन becomes its modifier. Thus, नलपीनमत्स्य can mean "a

The webpage
https://hindi.shabd.in/vairagya-
shatakam-
bhag-
acharya-
arjun-
tiwari/post/117629
says that
this verse
belongs
to the
Nītiratna. I
could not
find this
text.

ing Bengal quince-rind²¹⁸, crape jasmine, deodar, ??, ??, peas, costus, ??, liquor, yogurt, and whey. Or, [one can use] the ointment prepared by mixing citron, *amla*²¹⁹, salt, and ghee with honey and horseradish tree-root. Or else, [one can use] the unctuous sesame paste.

- 8 When the [condition of wind-blood] has a predominance of bile, the patient should be made to drink a decoction of grapes, ??-fruit, Indian ipecac, liquorice, sandalwood, and white teak. This decoction is sweetened with honey and sugar before consumption. Or, the decoction of wild asparagus, pointed gourd, cassia cinnamon, *triphalā*, ??, and heart-leaved moonseed should be given. [The patient should be administered] ghee that is prepared with sweet, bitter, and astringent [remedies].²²⁰

[The patient] should be sprinkled with a decoction of ??, lotus stalk, ??, and ?? mixed with goat-milk²²¹, or with rice water that is mixed with milk, sugarcane juice, honey, and sugar, or with whey and sour rice gruel mixed with a decoction of grapes and sugarcane. Or else, [the patient] should be sprinkled with ghee that is prepared with *jīvanīya*²²² or sprinkled with ghee that is purified for one hundred times.

The poultice [to be applied] should be made of rice flour or of the paste of sour rice gruel mixed with ??, ??, ??²²³, ??, ??, turmeric, horned pondweed, sacred lotus, etc. The poultice should be mixed with ghee.

- 9 The [condition of wind-blood] with a predominance of blood should be treated in the same way. Also, blood-letting should be done repeatedly.
- 10 However, when the [condition of wind-blood] has a predominance of

fat fish that is a नल (*cilicima*)".

Ḍalhaṇa says in his comment (**vulgate**) that नलमीन is a type of रोहित (*rohita*). Monier Williams says that *rohita* is a kind of fish: *Cyprinus Rohitaka*. Regarding the *rohita* fish, there is a *subhāṣita*: अगाधजलसञ्चारी न गर्व याति रोहितः | अङ्गुष्ठोदकमात्रेण शफरी फर्फरायते || This indicates that *rohita* is a deep water fish.

218 The word पेसिका in H should be read पेशिका.

219 Perhaps it could mean vinegar or sour curds. Refer to Monier Williams Sanskrit Dictionary.

220 Ḍalhaṇa comments (**vulgate**) that the sweet remedies are cottony jujube, etc., bitter remedies are pointed gourd, etc., and astringent remedies are *triphalā*, etc.

221 The compound word ending with कषायेण is taken to be a *bahuvrīhi* for अजाक्षीरेण (goat-milk).

222 *Jīvanīya* seems to be a group of medicinal herbs. There is an Ayurvedic preparation called *jīvanīya-ghṛta*. Refer to the *Āyurvedīya Śabdakośa* vol. 1.

223 तालीस should be read तालीश

phlegm, the patient should be made to consume a decoction of emblic and turmeric that is sweetened with honey, or a decoction of *triphalā*, or a paste of liquorice, ??, chebulic myrobalan, and ??. He should be made to drink chebulic myrobalan with water mixed with a little urine. He should be sprinkled with oil, urine, salty water, and liquor that are acidic²²⁴. Or, he should be sprinkled with a decoction of golden shower tree, etc.

The patient should be massaged with ghee cooked with sour cream, urine, liquor, ??²²⁵, liquorice, ??²²⁶, and ??.

The poultice should be made of either the paste of white mustard, or the paste of sesame and Withania, or the paste of ??²²⁷, selu plum, and wood apple, or the paste of honey, horseradish tree, and hogweed,²²⁸ or the paste of dry ginger, long pepper, black pepper,²²⁹ ??, and poison berry.²³⁰ These five poultices are prepared with salty water. Thus, they have been described.

- 11 In case of combined aggravation of two humours or simultaneous aggravation of all three humours, the stated methods of treating those aggravations should be combined.²³¹
- 12 In all [aggravations], one should consume chebulic myrobalan with jaggery. Or, one should have a diet of rice cooked in milk for ten days and should drink a mixture of long peppers crushed in milk, with increasing by five long peppers each night. Then one should reduce them again by the order of five more [each night].²³² In this way, one should [reduce] all the long peppers. This is called *Pippalīvarddhamānakam* (Increasing Long Peppers). It indeed cures wind-blood, intense fever,²³³

The provisional edition should be modified accordingly.

224 Reading the word सुक्त in H as शुक्त

225 Monier Williams states Rumex Vesicarius for śuktā

226 DCS has this entry: Cryptolepsis buehnerianii Roem. et Schult. (Surapāla (1988), 453)
Decalepis hamiltonii Wight et Arn. (Surapāla (1988), 453)

227 According to V. S. Apte, दारु can mean देवदारु.

228 H has a short अ at the end instead of the long आ.

229 व्योषतिक्ता refers to the group of these three pungent spices. Also see *Sūtrasthāna* 14.35.

230 In H, the Sanskrit syntax does not match up with what the author is trying to say. The name of the fifth paste should also have been in the nominative case, as the other four pastes.

231 It means that the respective methods of treating the aggravation of individual humours should be combined.

232 In H, the letter ज्ञ in भूयञ्ज should have been श्.

233 Perhaps विषमज्वर could mean irregular fever.

loss of appetite, jaundice, abdominal affection, piles, heavy breathing, cough, wasting disease, weak digestion, and heart disease.

The poultice is a paste of ??, sandalwood, ??, ??, wild asparagus, bul-rush,²³⁴ ??, ??, liquorice, ??, ??, ??, ??, heart-leaf sida, country mallow, and *Holostemma* creeper mixed with milk. Or it is a paste of white teak, liquorice, and ?? mixed with ghee and cream. Or it is olibanum cooked with milk that is mixed with ??, ??, ??, liquorice and the group of sweet herbs.

Old ghee that is cooked with emblic and ?? and sweetened with sugar and honey is for drinking. Old ghee that is cooked with *jīvanīya* or that is cooked with a decoction of ?? is for sprinkling. Cooked heart-leaf sida oil is for sprinkling, bathing, enema, and eating²³⁵. One should eat food preparations made of rice, ??, barley and wheat accompanied with milk, meat soup, or mung beans soup that is not sour. Blood-letting also [should be done]. The treatments of vomiting, purging of bowels, enema, and oily enema should be conducted when the humours are highly aggravated.

13

14 There are verses in this regard.²³⁶

There is immediate relief by the application of remedies such as these by which the physicians cure the chronic condition of wind-blood.

15-16 *Poultice, sprinkling [oil], plaster, oil massage,²³⁷ spacious and comfortable rooms²³⁸ with no wind, soft pillows, comfortable beds, and soft massages are recommended in the condition of wind-blood.*

17 *Exercise, mating, anger, eating hot, sour, or salty foods, sleeping during the day, and food that is slimy or heavy should be avoided.*

18 One should treat the person who is affected with spasmodic contraction,²³⁹ who does not have droopy eyes and crooked eyebrows, whose

234 H has कशेरुका.

235 Perhaps it means that one should eat foods cooked in that oil.

236 The word भवति in H should have been भवन्ति.

237 In H, the part व्यजनानिला: does not make proper sense in the verse. Emending it to व्यजनानि च could be a consideration, but fanning (व्यजन) a patient with wind-blood is not good, as understood from the recommendation that such a patient should stay in a non-windy room. Therefore, we have accepted the vulgate reading for the first half of this verse.

238 In H, read the स सरणानि as श.

239 In H, the reading अपताकिनम् should have been अपतानकिनम्.

fingers have not become rigid, who is not perspiring or trembling, who is not in a state of delirium, who is not bed-ridden,²⁴⁰ and who is not restrained externally. There at the beginning itself,²⁴¹ after rubbing the patient with oil and making him perspire, one should treat him with a strong *avapīḍa*²⁴² in order to clear his head. Then, the patient should be made to drink filtered ghee that is properly cooked with a decoction of beggarweed and other herbs, sugarcane juice, milk, and yogurt. In that way, the wind does not spread exceedingly.

Thereafter, one should gather wind-alleviating herbs such as deodar, etc. and other constituent parts, along with barley, ??, and ??, and the flesh of a freshwater aquatic creature all at one place and prepare a decoction of them. One should take this decoction and mix it properly with sour substances and milk, and then cook the *pratīvāpa*²⁴³ of liquorice in this mixture along with ghee, oil, body fat, and bone marrow. This is *trivṛt* that should be recommended in treatments of sprinkling, oil massage, applying a poultice, oral consumption, oily enema, and errhine for patients having spasmodic contractions.

The patient should then be made to sweat by the methods described earlier. If the wind is stronger then the patient should be immersed in [a vessel] filled with lukewarm fluid used for sprinkling (*trivṛt*). Or he should be kept in the hot fireplace of a blacksmith.²⁴⁴ Or else he should be made to sweat by [a mixture of] ??, *veśavāra*,²⁴⁵ and milk.

Oil cooked with the juice of radish, ??, ??, ??, and ?? should be used in sprinkling, etc. for patients with spasmodic contractions.²⁴⁶ Sour yogurt mixed with black pepper and drunk on an empty stomach alleviates spasmodic contractions. Or else, ghee, oil, body fat, or bone marrow

There, Dalhana comments that deliberation on *avapīḍa* had been done earlier when it was mentioned. Find that description to know more details.

240 V. S. Apte has खट्यति. The *Āyurvedīya Śabdakośa* has the entry खट्वापातिन् which means "one who is inclined to fall from bed." Perhaps the reading in H has an error of the letter या which should have been पा.

241 In H, प्रागैव should have been प्रागेव.

242 The *Āyurvedīya Śabdakośa* has the entry अवपीड that means administering an oily paste through the nose. Refer *SS Cikitsāsthāna* Ch. 40 text 44 for a better understanding of *avapīḍa*.

243 It refers to an admixture of substances to medicines either during or after decoction. Refer to Monier-Williams's Sanskrit dictionary.

244 H has the reading रथाकारचुल्लयाम् that means "fireplace shaped like a chariot", but the vulgate reading रथकारचुल्लयाम् makes more sense here. Thus, we have accepted it.

245 Refer the above text no.7 for *veśavāra*. In H, the syllable वै should have been वे.

246 The word तैलम् is not present in H but is present in the vulgate. We have accepted it.

[can be consumed on an empty stomach].

This procedure of treatment thus described is for spasmodic contractions caused only by wind. When mixed humours cause it then the treatment should also be mixed. And when the spasms subside the patient should be given *avapīḍa*-s. One should also consider the fats of cock, crab, black fish, and porpoise.²⁴⁷ Milk prepared with wind-alleviating medicines. Gruel prepared with barley, ??, ??, radish, yogurt, ghee, and oil.

One should treat this recurring spasm for ten nights with oil massage, purging of bowels, enemas, and oily enemas. One should also look up the treatment of diseases caused by wind. One should also undertake preventive measures.

- 19 One should treat the paralytic (hemiplegic) patient whose limbs are not languid, who is in pain, and who is self-composed. There, at the beginning itself the patient should be massaged with oil and made to sweat. After cleansing the patient with a mild purifier,²⁴⁸ he should be administered with an oily enema and then a non-oily enema. Then at the appropriate time, he should be treated with special enemas of the brain and the head according to the method prescribed in the treatment of *ākṣepaka*.²⁴⁹ *Anutaila* should be used for massage.²⁵⁰ *Sālvala* should be used for poultice.²⁵¹ heart-leaf sida oil should be used for oily enema. In this way, the unremitting patient should take the treatment for three to four months.

Search for the section where the treatment of *ākṣepaka* is described.

Make the first letter of sentence capital.

20

21

- 22 One should treat the patient with *ardita*²⁵² who is strong and possesses the means with the method prescribed in treating wind diseases. The unique thing is the treatment with enemas of the brain and the head, errhine, smoke, poultice, and steam bath through tubes. Then, one should take the great five roots (*pañcamūlī*) with grass and prepare its

247 H has the reading रसान् which means “juices”. It seems unrealistic that juice would be extracted by crushing these whole animals. Vulgate has the reading वसाः instead of रसान् which appears to be the more probable reading. Thus, we have accepted it.

248 According to P. V. Sharma, this refers to mild evacuatives (purgatives).

249 Refer *Nidānasthāna* 1.50-51 for *ākṣepaka*.

250 For the procedure of preparing *anutaila*, refer *Cikitsāsthāna* 4.28.

251 For the procedure of preparing *sālvala*, refer *Cikitsāsthāna* 4.14-15.

252 Refer *Nidānasthāna* 1.71-72 for *ardita*.

decoction in milk mixed with twice the water. Then, the decoction with the milk remaining²⁵³ should be brought down [the stove] and filtered. It should then be mixed with a *prastha*²⁵⁴ of oil and again placed over fire and cooked thoroughly. Then, the oil mixed with milk should be brought down [the stove] and then churned after it cools down. This is called *kṣīrataila* that should be used in drinks, etc. for patients with *ardita*.

- 23 In the diseases of *gr̥dhrasī*, *viścañcī*, *kroṣṭukaśīrṣa*, *paṅgukalāya*, lameness, *vātakāṇṭaka*, burning sensation in the foot, numbness of the foot, *avabāhuka*, deafness, and *dhamanīvāta*, one should pierce the blood vessel as described earlier and, barring the case of *avabāhuka*, one should look up the treatment for wind diseases.
- 24 However, in the case of *karṇamūla*,²⁵⁵ lukewarm juice of ??²⁵⁶ mixed with liquorice, oil, and salt should be put into the ears.²⁵⁷ Or else one can use goat urine, liquorice, and oil. Or else one can use oil that is cooked with citron, pomegranate, ?? juice, and urine.²⁵⁸ Or else one can use oil that is cooked with sour liquor, buttermilk, and urine. One should also make the patient sweat with a steam bath through tubes. One should also look up the treatment for wind diseases. More will be said later.
- 25 In the case of *tūnī* and *pratitūnī*, one should make the patient drink ghee and salt with hot water. Or else one should administer the powder of long pepper and other herbs with hot water. Or else one should make the patient drink ghee that is made thick with asafoetida and ??.²⁵⁹ One should also treat the patient with enemas.

253 It means that the water has evaporated.

254 Ḍalhana comments (**vulgate**) that a *prastha* is a measure of weight that is equal to 32 *pala*-s.

255 The vulgate has the reading कर्णशूले which appears to be a more credible reading according to the context.

256 शृङ्गवेर appears to be a name of ginger. Refer to the Sanskrit dictionary of Monier Williams.

257 In H, the reading रसैः does not seem to make sense here. Hence we have accepted the vulgate reading रसम्.

258 In H, the word तैल should have been तैलम् to make proper sense. The vulgate has this reading. Thus we have accepted it.

259 यवक्षार is an alkali prepared from the ashes of burnt green barleycorns. Refer to the Sanskrit dictionary of Monier Williams.

- 26 In the case of *ādhmāna*,²⁶⁰ however, one should do *avatarpaṇa*,²⁶¹ heating the hands, *phalavartikriyā*,²⁶² stimulation of digestion, and [administer] digestives. One should also employ the purging of bowels and enemas. In the case of *pratyādhmāna*,²⁶³ one should employ vomiting, fasting, and stimulation of digestion.
- 27 In the case of *aṣṭhīlā* and *pratyāṣṭhīlā*,²⁶⁴ the procedure is that of *gulma* and internal abscess.
- 28 The beneficial asafoetida, the three pungent spices (long pepper, black pepper, and dry ginger), sweet flag, ?? grains, ??, pomegranate, ??, velvet-leaf, leadwort, ??, rock salt, ??, ??, natron, long pepper root, ??, ??, ??, ?? (juniper berry), and ?? (cumin seeds) should be powdered. This powder should be mixed with a lot of citron juice. Then it should be made into pills each weighing one *akṣa*. Thereafter the patient of wind disease should consume one pill every morning. This medicine indeed cures *gulma*, rapid breathing, cough, loss of appetite, heart disease, *ādhmāna*, *pārsvodara*, *bastiśūla*, *anāhamūtra*, painful piles, *plīhodara*, and *pāṇḍuroga*. Also, this medicine is excessively used in cases of *tūnī* and *pratitūnī*.
- 29 There are verses in this regard.
- The wind that has entered into the body tissues should be correctly understood as either pure or vitiated by humours²⁶⁵ and should be cured accordingly.*
- 30 *The wind that is accompanied by fat causes a swelling that is painful, hard, and cold. The physician should properly treat it like a*

260 Refer to *Nidānasthāna* 1.88. V. S. Apte explains it as “swelling of the belly”. P.V. Sharma has translated it as flatulence.

261 We are unclear about its meaning. The vulgate has the reading अपतर्पण that means fasting.

262 The entry फलवर्ति has the meaning “suppository” in the Sanskrit dictionary of Monier Williams. The Cambridge dictionary explains suppository as “a small, solid pill containing a drug that is put inside the anus, where it dissolves easily.” Refer to the link <https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/suppository>. Last accessed 30-Oct-2023.

263 Refer to *Nidānasthāna* 1.89. According to the Sanskrit dictionary of Monier Williams, it is a kind of tympanites or wind-dropsy.

264 Refer to *Nidānasthāna* 1.90 and 1.91.

265 In H, the reading लक्षणोन्यामैश्च does not make sense. Hence I cannot translate it. Perhaps the correct reading could be लक्षणाभ्याञ्च. This would connect with the two conditions of the wind as stated in the verse.

- treating a swelling.*
- 31 *When the wind accompanied by phlegm and fat enters the thighs, it causes pain in and immobility of the thighs due to numbness, pain, and fever.*
- 32 *Also, the thighs become pained, stiff, cold, and do not quiver due to sleep. They become heavy and as if belonging to someone else.²⁶⁶*
- 33 *That is called ūrūstambha. Others call it āḍhyaṁvāta. In that case, one should drink the ṣaṇḍharaṇa powder with cool water.*
- 34 *Similarly, consuming the powder of long pepper and other herbs with hot water is beneficial. Or else, one should consume the powder of triphalā with honey and ??.*
- 35-38 *Or else, one should drink the best ?? or ?? with urine. Such a person cures the wind that is afflicted by phlegm and accompanied by fat, as well as heart disease, loss of appetite, gulma, and internal abscess.*
- One should employ salty urine [therapy], sudation, and hard rubbing. One should also apply [the paste of] mustard and ?? fruits mixed with urine.²⁶⁷*
- One should eat old ??s, ??, ??, etc. along with uncooked²⁶⁸ flesh of wild animals and unsalted vegetables that are beneficial.*
- 39 *When the phlegm and fat become amply reduced one should again employ the treatment of oil massage, etc. for the patient.*

266 In H, the verb वर्तते should have been in the dual. Also, the word आस्थिरौ does not make sense. The vulgate has the sensible reading अस्थिरौ which we have accepted here.

267 The word दिहेत् in H is not a proper Sanskrit word. We have taken its proper form दिह्यात् as given in the vulgate.

268 The vulgate has the reading अघृतैः that means without ghee.

Cikitsāsthāna 15: On Difficult Delivery

Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter on fetal malpresentation and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.²⁶⁹ Das made observations about the afterbirth (*aparā*) that is mentioned in 4.15.17 (**vulgate**).²⁷⁰ **selb-2005** has explored gynecological narratives in ayurveda.²⁷¹

Translation

- 1 And now we shall explain the difficult delivery medically treated.
- 3 Nothing else is more difficult than the extraction of a foetus since it has to be performed in the region of vagina, liver, spleen, intestines and the uterus. Actions like pushing up, pulling down, cutting off, incising, removing, pressing and straightening must be done using one hand, without hurting the foetus or the pregnant woman, Therefore, having considered that and obtaining permission, one should proceed with care.
- 4 Eight types of the positions of difficult foetus have earlier been mentioned briefly. Even if, in the natural birth process also the large / wrong way of the head, shoulders or hips of a foetus / child cling firmly in the passage.

²⁶⁹ [HIML](#): IA, 271–272.

²⁷⁰ Das [2003](#): 517.

²⁷¹ **selb-2005**; **selb-2005b**.

- 5 In the case of a live foetus, the delivering ladies should attempt to deliver it. And, during this process, they should be made to hear the sacred verses repeatedly meant for expulsion of a foetus.

6 *O beautiful woman, may the divine nectar and the moon and the sun and Uccaiśravas reside icumbhalakan your house.*

7 *O lady, may this nectar extracted from the water release this tiny foetus of yours. May the fire, wind, sun and Indra together with the ocean bestow upon you the peace.*

- 9 And, as mentioned before (3.10.16-20) the medicine should be administered. In the case of a dead fetus, (the physician) having inserted (his) hand lubricated with the *dhanvaka*, *myttikā* – soil, the *śālmālī*- the *seemul* and ghee into the vagina of a woman lying on her back, whose thighs are bent with the elevated waist with the support of the cloth of *cumbhalaka* should take away the fetus. In the case, the fetus coming out with both the thighs, should be stretched out in a normal way. If the fetus has reached with only one thigh, spreading out its other thigh it should be taken out. If the fetus is coming out with its buttocks portion, squeezing the buttocks upward, spreading the thighs it should be taken out. A fetus having come in a transverse position like an oblique (तिर्यक्चीनस्य ?) iron club, lifting upward its half of the lower part from behind, straightening its half of the upper part, bringing it to the passage of vagina, it should be taken out. The last two positions of the dead fetus cannot be accomplished. Thus, in this state, instrument should be employed / surgery should be undertaken.

- 10 But, the live fetus should not be torn apart in any case. As, the live fetus may kill the mother and self soon.

- 12 Next, assuring safety to the lady, cutting the head of the fetus with the instrument that has disc on the top (मण्डलाग्र) or finger shaped instrument (अङ्गुलिशस्त्र); removing the skull, the fetus should be taken out holding the forceps at its chest and armpit. If the head of the fetus is not separated, the fetus should be drawn out from its orbital regions or cheek (with the forceps); if the shoulders are stuck up in the passage, the fetus should be taken out by cutting its arm / arms at the shoulder region; tearing the abdomen when bloated with wind just like a stretched leather bag used for holding water, casting off the intestine,

the loosened fetus should be taken out. Or else, if its thighs are adhered to the passage, the bones of the thighs should be cut and fetus is removed.

- 13 The fetus is adhered to the passage from whichever its body part, the physician by separating that part should remove the fetus carefully and by all means the woman should be protected.
- 14 For, irritated wind causes different movements of the fetus. In this situation, the wise physician should act intelligently.
- 15 And, the learned physician should not delay even for moment in removing the dead fetus as it kills mother in no time like a breathless animal.
If impacted with hip, the hip bones should be cut and then delivered.

Kalpasthāna

Kalpasthāna 1: Protecting the King from Poison

Introduction

The first chapter of the Kalpasthāna of the *Suśrutasamhitā* addresses the topic of protecting a king from those who would assassinate him using poison. The king's kitchen is presented as the site of greatest vulnerability. The staff in the kitchen must be vetted carefully and watched for signs of dissimulation. The description of the body-language that tells a poisoner (verses 18–25) are engaging and vivid. These verses are closely parallel in sense to a passage in the *Arthaśāstra* that says,

The signs of a poisoner, on the other hand, are as follow: dry and dark look on the face, stuttering speech, excessive perspiration and yawning, trembling, stumbling, looking around while speaking, agitation while working, and not remaining in his place.²⁷²

Next, the text discusses the signs of poison in toothbrushes, in food, drink, massage oil and other items that are likely to come into physical contact with the king. In passages that are again paralleled in the *Arthaśāstra* the work describes how poisoned food kills insects and crackles in a fire, flashing blue and the reactions of various birds to poison are described.²⁷³

The work then moves on to the various symptoms experienced by the king after being poisoned, and remedies appropriate to each case. Poison

²⁷² *Arthaśāstra* 1.21.8 (kang-1969), translation by oliv-2013.

²⁷³ Cf. *Arthaśāstra* 1.21.6, *ibid.*, oliv-2013.

exhibits characteristic signs when added to milk and other drinks.²⁷⁴ Further forms of poisoning, their symptoms and treatments are described and finally the king is advised to live amongst trusted friends and to protect his heart by drinking various ghee compounds. He should eat the meat and soup made from various animals, including peacock, mongoose, alligator, deer. The chapter ends with the description of an emetic.

Literature

A brief survey of this chapter's contents and a detailed assessment of the existing research on it to 2002 was provided by Meulenbeld.²⁷⁵ Translations of this chapter since Meulenbeld's listing have appeared by wuja-2003shar-1999srik-2002.²⁷⁶

Manuscript notes

- MS Kathmandu NAK 5-333 has foliation letter numerals, for example on f. 323a, that are similar to MS Cambridge Add. 1693,²⁷⁷ dated to 1165 CE noted in Bendall's chart of Nepalese letter-numerals **bend-budd**

²⁷⁴ Cf. *Arthaśāstra* 1.21.6 again.

²⁷⁵ [HIML](#): IA, 289–290.

²⁷⁶ For a bibliography of translations to 2002, including Latin (1847), English (1877), Gujarati (1963) and Japanese (1971), see [HIML](#): IB, 314–315.

²⁷⁷ Scan at cudl.lib.cam.ac.uk/view/MS-ADD-01693/1.

Translation

- 1–2 And now I shall explain the procedures for safeguarding food and drink, as were declared by the Venerable Dhanvantari.²⁷⁸
- 3 Divodāsa, the king of the earth, was the foremost supporter of religious discipline and virtue. With unblemished instruction he taught his students, of whom Suśruta was the leader.²⁷⁹

[Threats to the king]

- 4–5 Evil-hearted enemies who have plucked up their courage, may seek to harm the king, who knows nothing of it. He may be assailed with poisons by or by his own people who have been subverted, wishing to pour the poison of their anger into any vulnerability they can find.²⁸⁰
- 6 Therefore, a king should always be protected from poison by a physician.
- 7 The racehorse-like fickleness of men's minds is well known. And for this reason, a king should never trust anyone.²⁸¹
- 8–11 He should employ a doctor in his kitchen (*mahānasa*) who is respected

278 MS H adds in the margin अथ खलु वत्स सुश्रुतः “Now begins Vatsa Suśruta.” This phrase has been copied here by the scribe from the beginning of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* chapter in the *sūtrasthāna* on the rules about food and drink (1.46.3 (**vulgate**)). The scribe presumably felt, not unreasonably, that this section had common subject matter with the present chapter. Further, SS 1.46.3 is the only place in the Nepalese transmission of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* that names Dhanvantari and integrates him into the narrative of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* as the teacher of Suśruta.

The mention of Dhanvantari here is the only other time in the Nepalese transmission that this authority is cited as the source of Ayurvedic teaching, and the unique occurrence of this actual phrase, “as was declared by the Venerable Dhanvantari.” See the discussion by **kleb-2021b**, who concludes that the earliest recoverable recension of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* may have had the phrase only at this point and not elsewhere in the work. See the further discussion by **birc-2021**.

279 This is a quite different statement from the vulgate which has Dhanvantari as the teacher, and calls him the Lord of Kāśī (*kāśīpati*) (**vulgate**). Dalhaṇa followed the vulgate but explicitly noted the reading before us with small differences: दिवोदासः क्षितिपतिस्तपोधर्मश्रुताकरः “Divodāsa, the king of the earth, was a mine of traditions about discipline and virtue.”

280 Verses about the use of Venomous Virgins as a weapon do not appear in the Nepalese manuscripts. Cf. **wuja-2003**. This material is present in the commentary of Gayadāsa.

281 The verb √ śvas is conjugated as a first class root in the Nepalese manuscripts.

by experts, who belongs to a good family, is orthodox, sympathetic, not emaciated, and always busy.

- 12–13 The kitchen should be constructed at a recommended location and orientation. It should have a lot of light,²⁸² have clean utensils and be staffed by men and women who have been vetted.²⁸³
- 17–18ab The chefs, bearers (*voḍhāra*), and makers of boiled rice soups and cakes and whoever else might be there, must all be under the strict control of the doctor.²⁸⁴
- 18cd–19ab An expert knows people's body language (*iṅgita*) through abnormalities in voice, movement and facial expression. He should be able to identify a poisoner by the following signs.
- 19cd–23 Wanting to speak, he gets confused, when asked a question, he never arrives at an answer, and he talks a lot of confused nonsense, like a fool. He laughs for no reason, cracks his knuckles and scratches at the ground. He gets the shakes and glances nervously from one person to another. His face is drained of colour, he is grimy (*dhyāma*) and he cuts at things with his nails.²⁸⁵ A poisoner goes the wrong way and is absent-minded.
- 25–27 I shall explain the signs to look for in toothbrush twigs, in food and drink as well as in massage oil (*abhyāṅga*) and combs (*avalekhana*); in dry rubs (*utsādana*) and showers, in decoctions (*kaṣāya*) and massage ointment (*anulepana*); in garlands (*sraja*), clothes, beds, armour and ornaments; in slippers and footstools, and on the backs of elephants and horses; in nasya (*snuff*), inhaled smoke (*dhūma*), eye make-up (*añjana*), etc., and any other things which are commonly poisoned. Then, I shall also explain the remedy.
- 28 Flies or crows or other creatures that eat a poisonous morsel (*bali*) served from the king's portion, die on the spot.

Cf.
Arthaśāstra
1.21.8.

282 We read महच्छुचिः with the Nepalese manuscripts and against the vulgate's महच्छुचि. We understand शुचिस् as a neuter noun meaning "light" following **apte-prac.**

283 Verses detailing the ideal staff are omitted in the Nepalese manuscripts. Cf. **vulgatewuja-2003.**

284 The word सौपोदनैकपूपिक "chefs for the boiled rice soups and cakes" is grammatically interesting. The term सूपोदन (as opposed to सूपौदन) is attested in the *Bodhāyanīya-grhyasūtra* 2.10.54 (**shas-1920**). More pertinently, perhaps, सूपोदन is attested in the Bower Manuscript, part II, leaf 11r, line 3 (**hoer-bowe**).

285 The word ध्याम is glossed by Ḍalhana (in a variant reading) as someone who is the colour of dirty clothes 5.1 (**vulgate**).

- 29 Such food makes a fire crackle violently, and gives it an overpowering colour like a peacock's throat.
- 30–33 After a chukar partridge looks at food which has poison mingled with it, its eyes are promptly drained of colour; a peacock pheasant drops dead. A koel changes its song and the common crane rises up excitedly.²⁸⁶ It will excite a peacock and the terrified parakeet and the hill myna screech. The swan trembles very much, and the racket-tailed drongo churrs.²⁸⁷ The chital deer sheds tears and the monkey releases excrement.²⁸⁸
- 34cd Vapour rising from tainted food gives rise to a pain in the heart, it makes the eyes roll, and it gives one a headache.²⁸⁹
- 35, 36cd In such a case, an errhine and a collyrium that are costus, ??, spikenard and honey (*madhus*);²⁹⁰ a paste of sandalwood on the heart may also provide relief.²⁹¹

286 The verb अर्च्छति “rises up” is a rare form best known from epic Sanskrit (ober-2003).

The transmitted form क्रौञ्च is obviously a colloquial version of Sanskrit क्रौञ्च. Commenting on 1.7.10 (**vulgate**), Ḍalhaṇa interestingly gives the colloquial versions of several Sanskrit bird names, even singling out pronunciation in the specific location of Kānyakubja. For क्रौञ्च he says that people pronounce it कुरञ्च and कौचि. The form क्रौञ्च is found in Pāli (see **cone-dict**, who notes that Ardhamāgadhī has the same form). Elsewhere, Ḍalhaṇa calls the bird क्रौञ्चिर, क्रौञ्चि, and कैचर (1.46.105 (**vulgate**), 6.31.154 (**vulgate**) and (6.58.44 (**vulgate**) respectively).

287 Ḍalhaṇa seemed confused about the racket-tailed drongo (भृङ्गराज). He called it a generic drongo (भ्रमरक), a word that can also mean “bee,” (**dave**), and then said that it is like the black drongo (धूम्याट) (**dave**) and that people call it “the king of birds.”

288 MS Kathmandu KL 699 reads “bull (वृषभ)” for “Chital deer (पृषत).” The latter may perhaps be mistaken for the former in the Newa script, although the reading of MS Kathmandu KL 699 is hard to read at this point.

289 “Tainted” translates उपक्षिप्त. The word’s semantic field includes “to hurl, throw against,” and especially “to insult verbally, insinuate, accuse.” The commentator Ḍalhaṇa glossed the term as, “spoiled food given to be eaten” (विदूषितस्यान्नस्य भोक्तुं दत्तस्य), but he noted that some people read “उखाक्षिप्त” or “thrown into a pan.” Other translators have commonly translated it as “served,” perhaps influenced by Ḍalhaṇa’s “given (दत्त).”

290 The vulgate supplies another phrase and verb at this point that is not present in the Nepalese transmission, but that makes the text flow more easily.

291 **sing-1972** discussed the difficulties in identifying लामज्ज, a plant cited more often in the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* than in the *Carakasaṃhitā*; Ḍalhaṇa adopted the common view that it is a type of *uśīra* or vetiver grass. The grammatical neuter form मधुस् “sweetness” of the Nepalese manuscripts is less common than neuter मधु “honey, sweetness, liquorice.”

- 37 Held in the hand, it makes the hand burn, and the nails fall out. In such a case, the ointment (*pralepa*) is beautyberry, velvet-mite, soma and blue water-lily.²⁹²
- 38–39 If he eats that food, through inattention or by mistake, then his tongue will feel like a pebble (*aṣṭhīlā*) and it will lose its sense of taste. It stings and burns, and his saliva (*śleṣman*) dribbles out.²⁹³ In such a case, he should apply the treatment recommended above for vapour (*bāṣpa*), and what will be stated below under “toothbrush twigs”.²⁹⁴
- 40 On reaching his stomach, it causes stupor (*mūrcchā*), vomiting, the hair stands on end, there is distension, a burning feeling and an impairment of the senses.²⁹⁵
- 41 In this case, vomiting must quickly be induced using the fruits of emetic nut, gourd, red gourd, and luffa, taken with milk and watered butter-milk, or alternatively with rice-water.
- 42 Reaching the intestines (*pakvāśaya*), it causes a burning feeling, stupor,

292 “Beautyberry” (*Callicarpa macrophylla* Vahl.) is one identification of श्यामा, but vaidyas and commentators have different ideas about the plant’s identity (see glossary).

On translating इन्द्रगोप as “velvet-mite,” see **lien-1978**. Ḍalhaṇa’s remarks show that he had a reading इन्द्रगोपा before him, and he tries to explain इन्द्रा and गोपा as separate plants. But he also says that some people read इन्द्रगोप.

Ḍalhaṇa curiously parsed the name सोमा (f.) out of the compound; this feminine noun is almost unknown to Ayurvedic literature. Some dictionaries and commentators consider it a synonym for गुडूची, others for ब्राह्मी or चन्द्रतरु. Ḍalhaṇa also mentioned that some people think the word refers to the soma creeper (सोमलता), which might explain his choice to take the word as feminine. But the compounded word is far more likely to be सोम (m.), the well-known mystery plant (**wuja-2003**). If this can be taken as rue (*Ruta graveolens*, L.), as some assert, one can point to a pleasing passage in Dioscorides where rue plays an antitoxic role: “...it is a counterpoison of serpents, the stinging of Scorpions, Bees, Hornets and Wasps; and it is reported that if a man be anointed with the juice of the Rue, these will not hurt him; and that the serpent is driven away at the smell thereof when it is burned; insomuch that when the weasel is to fight with the serpent she armeth herself by eating Rue, against the might of the serpent” (**wren-1956osba-dios**).

293 The word अष्टीला is normally feminine. The Nepalese manuscripts read it with a short अ- ending. Gayadāsa noticed that some manuscripts read अष्टील with a short -अ ending (MS Bikaner RORI 5157, f. 5v:7–8) and Ḍalhaṇa reproduced his observation. The vulgate reading “from his mouth (चास्यात्)” is more obvious (*lectio faciliior*), but is not attested in the Nepalese manuscripts.

294 Poisoned toothbrushes are discussed in verses 48 ff. below.

295 I translate मूर्च्छा in the light of the metaphors discussed by **meul-2011**, that include thickening and losing consciousness.

- diarrhoea, thirst, impairment of the senses, flatulence (*āṭopa*) and it makes him pallid and thin.
- 43 In such a case, purgation with the fruit of indigo (*nīlī*), together with ghee, is best. And ‘slow-acting poison antidote (*dūṣṭviṣāri*)’ should be drunk with honey and curds (*dadhi*).²⁹⁶
- 44 When poison is in any liquid substances such as milk, wine or water, there are various streaks, and foam and bubbles form.
- 45 And no reflections are visible or, however, if they can be seen once more, they are distorted, fractured, or tenuous and distorted too.²⁹⁷
- 46 Vegetables, soups, food and meat are soggy and tasteless. They seem to go stale suddenly, and they have no aroma.
- 47 All edibles lack aroma, colour or taste. Ripe fruits rapidly rot (*pra√kuth*) and unripe ones ripen.²⁹⁸
- 48 When a toothbrush twig has poison on it, the bristles are corroded and the flesh of the tongue, gums and lips swells up.²⁹⁹
- 49 Then, once his swelling is lanced, one should rub (*pratisāraṇa*) it with fire-flame bush flowers jambul, mango stones and chebulic myrobalan fruit mixed with honey.³⁰⁰
- 50 Alternatively, the rubbing (*pratisāraṇa*) can be done with either the roots of sage-leaved alangium, the bark of blackboard tree or siris seeds.³⁰¹

I’m still unhappy about this verse.

Mention this in the introduction as an example of the scribe knowing the vulgate.

fn about sadyas+

296 The ‘slow-acting poison’ is discussed at 5.2.25 ff. (**vulgate**).

297 Both Nepalese witnesses read विकृत (distorted) twice, which is tautologous. In the first occurrence both read विकृता without proper termination. One might read the sandhi in the second occurrence as or not distorted (*vāvikṛtā*), but this gives no better sense. The scribe of MS Kathmandu NAK 5-333, apparently the original hand, added in the margin the alternate reading “double (*yamalā*)” as in the vulgate. Perhaps the scribe too was troubled by the tautology. It is also evidence that he was aware of a witness with variant readings similar to the vulgate. We emend for grammar but retain the *lectio difficilior*.

298 The root *√कुथ्* “stink, putrify, rot” is apparently known only from its few uses in the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*.

299 Gayadāsa and Ḍalhaṇa pointed out that “tooth socket (दन्तवेष्ट)” and “gum (दन्तमांस)” have the same meaning (2.16.14–26 (**vulgate**)).

300 This recipe is different from the vulgate.

301 The spelling of the name अङ्गोल्ल varies अङ्गोट, अङ्गोठ, अङ्गोल (**gvdb**); Ḍalhaṇa noted that the form अङ्गोल्ल is a colloquialism (1.37.12 (**vulgate**)). The sentence is awkward and we have emended शिरीषमाषक to be a plural, as in the vulgate, rather than the ablative singular of the Nepalese witnesses. We follow Ḍalhaṇa in interpreting the compound to refer to the distinctive bean-like siris seeds, rather than to mung beans

- 51ab One should give advice about a poisoned tongue-scraper or mouth-wash (*kavala*) in the same way as for a toothbrush twig.
- 51cd Massage oil that has been laced with poison is slimy, thick and discoloured.
- 52 When the massage oil has been contaminated with poison, boils arise, pain, a discharge (*srāva*), inflammation of the skin, and sweating.³⁰² And the flesh splits open.
- 53–54 In such a case, sandalwood, crape jasmine, costus, and cuscus grass, bamboo leaves, heart-leaved moonseed and heart-leaved moonseed, white clitoria, sacred lotus, and Indian barberry should be made into an ointment (*anulepana*) for the patient, who has been sprinkled with cold water. That is also recommended as a drink with the juice and leaves of wood apple.³⁰³
- 55 In the case of a dry rub (*utsādana*), a shower (*parīṣeka*), an infusion, a massage ointment (*anulepana*), or in beds, clothes, or armour, the physician should understand that it is the same as for oil massage (*abhyāṅga*).³⁰⁴
- 56–58 When a comb has poison in it, the hair falls out, the head aches and blood oozes from the follicles (*kha*) and lumps (*granthi*) appear on the head. In such a case, one should repeatedly apply an ointment of black earth soaked with **bear's bile**,³⁰⁵ ghee, beautyberry,³⁰⁶ black creeper, and amaranth. Good alternatives are either the fluid extract of cow-dung, or the juice of jasmine, the juice of woodrose, or household soot.³⁰⁷
- 59 If either massage oil for the head, or a helmet for the head, in a wash,

Bear's bile
instead of
deer's bile.

(5.1.50 (**vulgate**)).

302 The feminine स्फोट for “boils” is unattested.

303 This compound could be interpreted as “wood apple juice and cassia cinnamon.”

Note that this recipe differs from that of the vulgate, which requires urine.

304 See verse 52 above.

305 Ḍalhaṇa comments here that ‘bile is that fluid which goes along inside the tube attached to the liver’ (कालखण्डलग्ननलिकामध्यगतजलं पित्तम्) 5.1.57 (**vulgate**).

306 See note 292.

307 The plant identifications in this passage follow Ḍalhaṇa’s glosses, although he noted a difference of opinion on the identity of woodrose (lit. “mouse-ear”).

The expression धूमो वागारसंज्ञितः ‘...or the smoke termed “house”’ is commonly interpreted by translators and in Ayurvedic dictionaries as ‘household soot,’ and this does seem to be the meaning, in context. The term was comprehensively discussed by meul-2008. Cf. note 401, p. 123.

turban, or garlands that are contaminated with poison, then one should treat it in the same way as a comb.

- 60–61 When face make-up is poisoned, the face becomes dark and has the symptoms found with poisoned massage oil. It is covered with spots (*kaṇṭaka*) that are like lotus-spots (*padminīkaṇṭaka*).³⁰⁸ In this case, the drink is honey and ghee, and the ointment (*pralepa*) is sandalwood with ghee, curds, honey, verbena, scarlet mallow and hogweed.³⁰⁹
- 62–63ab Elephants and the like become ill and they dribble saliva. And the rider gets spots (*sphoṭa*) and a discharge on his scrotum, penis, and rectum. In this case, one prescribes the same therapy as for poisoned massage oil for both the rider and the mount.
- 63cd–65ab When there is poison in snuff (*nasya*) or smoke, the symptom (*liṅga*) is blood coming out of the apertures of the head (*kha*), a headache, a flow of mucus (*kapha*) and impairment of the senses. In such a case, ghee of cows etc., boiled up with their milk and Himalayan monkshood, is prescribed, with henna, as a cold drink or er-rhine.
- 65cd–66 Flowers lose their fragrance and colour, and wilt. On smelling them, he gets a headache and his eyes fill with water. In this case, the treatment is what was proposed above for vapour (*bāṣpa*) and that which is traditional for face make-up.
- 67–68 When it is in ear-oil, there is degeneration in the ear, and painful swelling. There is also a discharge from the ear and in such a case it needs to be irrigated (*pratipūrana*) promptly with ghee and honey. Extracted juice (*svarasa*) of wild asparagus and very cold juice of white cutch tree are also recommended as something good.³¹⁰
- 69 When poison is mixed in with eye make-up (*añjana*), he gets tears and rheum (*upadeha*), with a burning feeling, pain, faulty vision (*dr̥ṣṭivibhrama*), and possibly even blindness.³¹¹

punarnavā
in the N &
K MSS

śrita for
śṛta

explain
more

³⁰⁸ See the description of this condition at 2.13.40 (**vulgate**), where the skin on the face is characterized as having pale circular patches that are itchy and have spots.

³⁰⁹ The common plant-name पुनर्नवा is read as पुनर्णवा in both Nepalese witnesses. This unusual form is technically-speaking legal according to Pāṇini 8.4.3, but is not attested in published texts. पुनर्णवा is found rarely in some other Nepalese manuscripts such as the *Brahmayāmala* (a.k.a. *Picumata*, 44.81, transcription thanks to Shaman Hatley), and elsewhere (e.g., in **gana-1920**, where it is the name of a constellation).

³¹⁰ The syntax of the Nepalese version is slightly unclear, but the vulgate has smoothed out the difficulties.

³¹¹ The term translated as “faulty vision” could also mean “rolling eyes.” “Eye make-up”

70–71 In this case, one must immediately drink ghee and have it also in an eyewash (*tarpaṇa*) with long pepper. One should have an eye ointment (*añjana*) of the juice of periploca of the woods and have the extract (*niryāsa*) of three-leaved caper, wood apple and periploca of the woods and the flower of marking-nut tree.

Medical difference from Sharma.

example where the vulgate clarifies that these should be used separately; appears to be a gloss inserted into the vulgate text.

72–73 Because of poisoned slippers there will definitely be a swelling, numbness (*svāpa*), a discharge (*srāva*) and an outbreak of spots (*sphoṭa*) on the feet. One should clean (*pra√sādh*) footstools together with slippers.

74 Ornaments lose their lustre, and they do not shine as they used to. They damage their respective locations with burning, sepsis (*pāka*), and fissuring (*avadāraṇa*).³¹²

75ab One should apply the stated procedure for massage oil (*abhyāṅga*) to poisoned slippers and ornaments.

75cd–76 In the case of the affliction (*upasarga*) by poison which has been described above, starting from ‘vapour’ and ending with ‘ornaments,’ the physician should observe the side-effects (*upadrava*) and then prescribe the therapy called the Great Fragrance (*mahāsugandha*) antidote, which I shall describe.³¹³

77–78ab He should prescribe it in drinks, liniments (*ālepana*), errhines (*nasya*), and in eye ointment (*añjana*). Also, he should use sharp purgatives and emetics. If bleeding is present, he should have the indicated veins pierced.

78cd–79ab If either purging nut or a fern is tied on to the King’s wrist, then all food that is mixed with poison will be rendered free of poison.³¹⁴

79cd–80 He should always guard his heart when amongst people who are not

The two uses of *prāpta* are hard to translate. *prāptāh* → *kṣipram* is an example of the vulgate banalizing the Sanskrit text to make sense of a difficult passage.

√ *vyadh* not √ *vedh* (also elsewhere and for the ears), causative optative.

is normally made of Indian barberry.

312 The reading अवदारुण in MS Kathmandu KL 699 is not attested elsewhere in Sanskrit literature. On “sepsis” for पाक, see wuja-2003.

313 This antidote is indeed described later, in dramatic terms, at 5.6.14–27 (**vulgate**). A recipe with eighty-five ingredients including cow’s bile, it is praised as chief of all antidotes, one that can drag the patient back from the very jaws of death, from even the poisonous fangs of Vāsuki.

314 In early Ayurvedic literature, the plant अजरुहा is mentioned only here and its identity is unknown. It may be a fern of the Nephrodium family, according to **gvdb**. Ḍalhaṇa, on 5.1.78 (**vulgate**), cited a description of the two plants from the little-known authority Uśanas (HIML: IA, 660 et passim) who described अजरुहा as a white root with spots on it that looks like collyrium when it is split; when drunk with sandalwood it causes poison to be digested.

- his friends.³¹⁵ Before eating, he should drink the kinds of ghee called “Invincible” and “Immortal”.³¹⁶ He should drink ghee (*sarpiṣ*), honey, curds (*dadhi*), milk (*payas*), or cold water.
- 81 He should consume monitor lizard, peacock, mongoose, chital deer, and blackbuck too, that destroy poison, and their juices.
- 82 As discerning person should add well-crushed black creeper,³¹⁷ liquorice, and sugar to the meats of monitor lizard, mongoose and blackbuck too.
- 83 Add sugar and Himalayan monkshood to peacock flesh, together with ginger. And for meat from a chital deer, he should add long pepper, with ginger.
- 84ab A cold neem broth with honey and ghee is wholesome too.
- 84cd A discerning person should partake of hard and soft foods that counteract poison.³¹⁸
- 85 If poison might have been drunk, a person who has protected his heart should make himself vomit using long pepper, liquorice, honey, sugar, sugar cane juice, and water.

The first chapter in the Kalpas.

³¹⁵ The *Carakasamhitā* described “protecting the heart” (हृदयावरण) as drinking several sweet, oily drinks to surround the heart and keep it safe (6.23.46 (**cara-trikamji**)). Ḍalhaṇa on 5.1.79–81 (**vulgate**) explained it as taking a number of anti-toxic medicines, including those listed in the present passage, in order to cover or hide (प्रच्छादन) the heart. Note that the Nepalese version reads the opposite of the vulgate: one should guard one’s heart when amongst enemies, not friends. This is far more logical; it is also the reading known to the 1.8.89a (**atha-1980**).

³¹⁶ These ghee compounds are described in later chapters: see 5.2.47–49 (**vulgate**) and 5.6.13 (**vulgate**).

³¹⁷ Ḍalhaṇa on 5.1.82 (**vulgate**) equated this with turpeth.

³¹⁸ On this expression, see **yagi-1994**.

Kalpasthāna 2: Poisonous Plants

Introduction

This section begins with several lists of poisonous plants. The Sanskrit names for these plants are mostly not standard or familiar from anywhere in Sanskrit or ethnobotanical literature. It remains a historical puzzle why these particular names are so difficult to interpret. However, we are not the first to encounter these difficulties. In the twelfth century, the learned commentator on the text, Ḍalhaṇa, remarked,

In spite of having made the greatest effort, it has been impossible to identify these plants. In the Himalayan regions, Kirātas and Śābaras are able to identify them.³¹⁹

Ḍalhaṇa also recorded variant readings of these poison names from the manuscripts that he consulted of the lost commentary of Gayadāsa (fl. c. CE 1000). The identities of these poisons have been in doubt for at least a thousand years.³²⁰ Identifications have in many cases been equally impossible for us today.

One path for exploration in this situation is to attempt to reverse-engineer some identifications by considering the known toxic plants of India.³²¹

³¹⁹ After *Suśrutasaṃhitā*, *kalpasthāna* 2.5 (**vulgate**). From the view of Sanskrit authors, Kirātas and Śābaras were tribal peoples. The eleventh-century author Bhikṣu Govinda, however, cast his treatise as a dialogue with a Kirāṭa king called Madana who was a master of the alchemical art ([HIML](#): IIA, 620).

³²⁰ See **wuja-2003**.

³²¹ Valuable reference sources on Indian plant toxicology in general include **pill-2013** and **barc-2008**.

Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.³²²

Translation

- 1 And now I shall explain **what should be known** about stationary poisons.³²³
- 3 It is said that there are two kinds of poisons, stationary (*sthāvara*) and mobile (*jaṅgama*). The former dwells in ten sites, the latter in sixteen places.
- 4 Traditionally, the ten are: root, leaf, fruit, flower, bark, milky sap (*kṣīra*), pith (*sāra*), resin (*niryāsa*), the elements (*dhātu*), and the tuber.
- 5 In that context,
 - the eight root-poisons are:³²⁴
 1. liquorice (?),³²⁵
 2. sweet-scented oleander,³²⁶
 3. jequirity,³²⁷
 4. **false daisy**,³²⁸

³²² HIMAL: IA, 290–291.

³²³ No reference is made to Dhanvantari (**birc-2021**). “Stationary” here is a term contrasted with “moving,” and signifies plants as opposed to animals and insects.

³²⁴ Some South Asian plants with poisonous roots that we would have expected to see in this list include *Croton tiglium*, L., *Calotropis* spp., *Citrullus colocynthus* L. Schrad., and *Ricinus communis* L. (**pill-2010**).

³²⁵ Liquorice eaten in excess can be poisonous, but it is unlikely to be the plant intended here. **gydb** noted that the poisonous root mentioned in this passage, “remains to be identified.”

³²⁶ The roots of sweet-scented oleander are highly toxic, as are most parts of the plant (**pill-2019**).

³²⁷ Jequirity contains a dangerous toxin called Abrin in its seeds and to a lesser extent in its leaves, but apparently not in its roots or bulb. Abrin is not harmful if eaten, but an infusion of the bruised (not boiled) seeds injected or rubbed in the eyes can be fatal (NK). The dose can be quite small.

³²⁸ The plant is usually called just *bhaṅgurā* without the prefix *su-* “good.” However, there is no reported toxicity associated with *E. prostrata*. The vulgate reads सुगन्धा (snakeroot).

5. (?),³²⁹ and ending with
 6. ??,³³⁰
 7. country sarsaparilla (?),³³¹ and
 8. medhshingi,³³²
- the leaf-poisons include:
 - aconite leaf (?),
 - drum-giver (?),
 - thorn apple, and
 - big thorn apple;
 - the fruits of items like: jequirity, marking-nut tree, and poison-altar (?) are
 - kumudavati (*kumadavati*)ⁱ,
 - reṇuka (?)ⁱⁱ,
 - kurūkaka (?)ⁱⁱⁱ,
 - 'little bamboo' (*veṇuka*)^{iv},³³³,

329 This poisonous root cannot at present be securely identified. Similar-sounding candidates include *karkaṭaka*, *karahāṭa* (emetic nut), and *karaghāṭa*, but since this is a prose passage, there would be no reason to alter the word to fit a metre. **moni-sans** cite an unknown lexical source that equates *karāṭa* (mn.) with safflower (*Carthamus tinctorius*, L.), but this plant does not have a poisonous root.

330 The roots of both rose and white leadwort are very toxic.

331 The text reads masculine *ananta*, which is not a plant name. Gayī's commentary on 5.2.5 (**vulgate**) noted a variant reading of feminine *anantā* in place of *gargaraka*, earlier in the compound. But the feminine *anantā*, country sarsaparilla, is not a poisonous plant.

332 **meul-sear** argued that our text reads a masculine or neuter noun *vijaya*, which never signifies cannabis. However, unlike the vulgate, the unanimous readings of the Nepalese manuscripts give feminine *vijayā*. Nevertheless, even the feminine form only started to signify *Cannabis sativa* L. after the end of the first millennium (**meul-sear; wuja-cann; mchu-2021a**). The *Sauśrutanighaṇṭu* gives a number of synonyms for *vijayā*, almost none of which have any poisonous parts (**suve-2000**). But one of them, *viṣāṇī* (also *meṣaśṛṅgī*), is sometimes equated with *Dolichandrone falcata* (DC.) **Seemann (adps)**, a plant used as an abortifacient and fish poison (**nadk-1982**). This identification is tenuous.

333 Not poisonous.

i unknown; see ?

ii ?; see *Piper aurantiacum* Wall. (**NK**) is not poisonous.

iii ?; see ?

iv *Bambusa bambos*, Druce?; see **NK #307**

- thorn apple (*karambha*)^v,
- 'big thorn apple' (*mahākarambha*)^{vi},
- 'pleaser' (*nandanā*)^{vii},
- 'crow' (*kāka*)^{viii},
- the flower-poisons include those of:
 - rattan (*vetra*)^{ix},
 - wild chinchona (*kādamba*)^x,
 - black pepper (*vallīja* → *marica*)^{xi},
 - thorn apple (*karambha*)^{xii}, and
 - big thorn apple (*mahākarambha*)^{xiii};
- the seven bark, pith (*sāra*) and resin (*niryāsa*) poisons are:
 - 'gutboiler' (*antrapācaka*)^{xiv},
 - 'blade' (*kartarīya*)^{xv},
 - wild mustard (*saurīyaka*)^{xvi},
 - emetic nut (*karaghāṭa* → *karahāṭa?* → *madana*)^{xvii},
 - thorn apple (*karambha*)^{xviii},
 - wild asparagus (*nandana* → *bahuputrā?*)^{xix}, and

v *Datura metel*, L.; see AVS 2.305 (cf. *Abhidhānamañjarī*), NK #796 ff., Potter 292 f., ADPS 132.

vi *Datura metel*, L.?; see AVS 2.305 (cf. *Abhidhānamañjarī*), NK #796 ff., Potter 292 f., ADPS 132.

vii ?; see ?

viii ?; see ?

ix *Calamus rotang*, L.; see AVS 1.330, NK #413

x *Anthocephalus cadamba*, Miq.; see NK #204

xi *Piper nigrum*, L.?; see NK #1929; Rā.6.115, Dha.4.85, Dha.2.88

xii *Datura metel*, L.; see AVS 2.305 (cf. *Abhidhānamañjarī*), NK #796 ff., Potter 292 f., ADPS 132.

xiii *Datura metel*, L.?; see AVS 2.305 (cf. *Abhidhānamañjarī*), NK #796 ff., Potter 292 f., ADPS 132.

xiv unknown; see ?

xv unknown; see ?

xvi *Cleome viscosa*, L.? (cf. Rā.4.144); see AVS 2.116, NK #615

xvii *Randia dumetorum*, Lamk.; see NK #2091

xviii *Datura metel*, L.; see AVS 2.305 (cf. *Abhidhānamañjarī*), NK #796 ff., Potter 292 f., ADPS 132.

xix *Asparagus racemosus*, Willd.; see ADPS 441, AVS 1.218, NK #264, IGP 103, IMP 4.2499ff., Dymock 482ff.

- munj grass (*nārācaka*)^{xx,334}
- the three milky sap (*kṣīra*)-poisons are:
 - purple calotropis (*kumudaghnī* → *arka*?)^{xxi,335}
 - oleander spurge (*snuhī*)^{xxii}, and
 - ‘web-milk’ (*jālakṣīri*)^{xxiii};
- the two element (*dhātu*)-poisons are:
 - ‘foam-stone’ (*phenāśma*)^{xxiv}, and
 - orpiment (*haritāla*)^{xxv,336}
- the thirteen tuber-poisons are:
 - jequirity (*kālakūṭa*)^{xxvi,337}
 - wolfsbane (*vatsanābha*)^{xxvii},

334 The bark of wild asparagus (*Asparagus racemosus*, Willd.) is toxic.

335 The name of this poison, *kumuda-ghnī*, means ‘lotus killer’. In Sanskrit literature, the *kumuda* lotus is associated with the moon, since it blossoms by night. Since the sun causes this lotus to close, it is therefore an ‘enemy’ of the lotus. One of the chief words for the sun, *arka*, is also the name of *Calotropis gigantea*, which indeed has a milky juice which is a violent purgative, poison and abortifacient.

336 **duft-1922** conjectured that ‘foam-stone’ may be impure white arsenic obtained by roasting orpiment.

337 The much later (perhaps sixteenth century) alchemical *Rasaratnasamuccaya* of pseudo-Vāgbhaṭa (21.14) says that the *kālakūṭa* poison, here translated as ‘jequirity’, is similar to ‘*kākacañcu*’ or ‘Crow’s Beak’, which is indeed a name for the plant jequirity or *Abrus precatorius*, L., more commonly called *guñjā* (not to be confused with *gañjā*). The black seed-pod is described as having a ‘sharp deflexed beak’ in botanical descriptions, so the Sanskrit name is quite graphic and appropriate. The poisonous scarlet seeds of *A. precatorius* can have a distinct black dot or tip, which could perhaps be translated ‘*kāla-kūṭa*’, or ‘Black Tip’.

The *Rājaniḥṣaṇṭupariśiṣṭa* (9.35) gives *kālakūṭaka* as a synonym for *kāraskara*, or *Strychnos nux-vomica*, L., whose seeds are notoriously poisonous.

xx *Saccharum bengalense*, Retz.?; see NK #2184

xxi *Calotropis gigantea*, (L.) R. Br.; see ADPS 52, AVS 1.341, NK #427, Potter 63

xxii *Euphorbia neriifolia*, L., or *E. antiquorum*, L.; see ADPS 448, AVS (2.388), 3.1, NK #988, IGP 457b

xxiii unknown; see ?

xxiv unknown; see ?

xxv *Arsenii trisulphidum*; see NK v. 2, p. 20 ff.

xxvi *Abrus precatorius*, L.? Cf. RRS 21.14.; see AVS 1.10, NK #6, Potter 168.

xxvii *Aconitum napellus*, L.; see AVS 1.47, NK #42, Potter 4 f.

- Indian mustard (*sarṣapa*)^{xxviii},
- leadwort (*pālaka* → *citraka*)^{xxix},
- ‘muddy’ (*kardama*)^{xxx}, the
- ‘Virāṭa’s plant’ (*vairāṭaka*)^{xxxi},
- nutgrass (*mustaka*)^{xxxii},
- atis root (*śrīgīviṣa*)^{xxxiii},
- sacred lotus (*prapuṇḍarīka*)^{xxxiv},
- radish (*mūlaka*)^{xxxv},
- ‘alas, alas’ (*hālāhala*)^{xxxvi},
- ‘big poison’ (*mahāviṣa*)^{xxxvii}, and
- galls (*karkaṭa*)^{xxxviii}.³³⁸

Thus, there are fifty-five stationary poisons.

- 6 There are believed to be four kinds of wolfsbane, two kinds of *mustaka*, and six kinds of Indian *sarṣapa*. But the rest are said to be unique types.

The effects of poisons

- 7–10 People should know that root-poisons cause writhing (*udveṣṭana*), ranting (*pralāpa*), and delirium (*moha*), and leaf-poisons cause yawning,

338 Leadwort root is a powerful poison. Nutgrass is tuberous, but non-toxic. Atis has highly toxic tuberous roots. Neither sacred lotus nor galls are toxic. The ‘alas, alas’ poison (*hālāhala*) is the mythical poison produced from the churning of the ocean at the time of creation: it occurs in medical texts such as the present one, and commentators identify it with one or other of the lethal poisons such as wolfsbane or jequirity. **agra-indi** makes the intriguing suggestion that the word *hālāhala*, possibly to be identified with Pāṇini’s *hailihila* (P.6.2.38), may be of Semitic origin, although his evidence seems uncertain (**stei-pers** cites Persian *halāhil* ‘deadly (poison)’ as a loan from Sanskrit). **mayr-kurz** also cites a claim for an Austro-Asiatic origin for the word.

xxvi **B** *Brassica juncea*, Czern. & Coss.; see AVS 1.301, NK #378

xxix **P** *Plumbago zeylanica* (indica? rosea?), L.; see Rā. 6.124, ADPS 119, NK #1966, 1967

xxx unknown; see ?

xxxi unknown; see ?

xxxii **C** *Cyperus rotundus*, L.; see ADPS 316, AVS 2.296, NK #782

xxxiii **A** *Aconitum heterophyllum*, Wall. ex Royle; see AVS 1.42, NK #39

xxxiv **N** *Nelumbo nucifera*, Gaertn.; see Dutt 110, NK #1698

xxxv **R** *Raphanus sativus*, L.; see NK #2098

xxxvi unknown; see Cf. *Soḍhalanighantu* p.43 (sub bola) = stomaka = vatsanābha

xxxvii unknown; see ?

xxxviii **R** *Rhus succedanea*, L.; see NK #2136

writhing, and wheezing (*śvāsa*).

Fruit-poisons cause swelling of the scrotum, a burning feeling and writhing. Flower-poisons will cause vomiting, distension (*ādhmāna*) and sleep (*svāpa*).

The consumption of poisons from bark, pith (*sāra*) and resin (*niryāsa*) will cause foul breath, hoarseness (*pāruṣya*), a headache, and a discharge of phlegm (*kapha*).³³⁹

The milky sap (*kṣīra*)-poisons make one froth at the mouth, cause loose stool, and make the tongue feel heavy.³⁴⁰ The element (*dhātu*)-poisons give one a crushing pain in the chest, make one faint and cause a burning feeling on the palate.

These poisons are classified as ones which are generally speaking lethal after a period of time.

11–17 Symptoms of tuber poisoning

The tuber-poisons, though, are severe. I shall talk about them in detail. With jequirity (*kālakūṭa*)^{xxxix}, there is numbness and very severe trembling. With wolfsbane (*vatsanābha*)^{xl}, there is rigidity of the neck, and the faeces, and urine become yellow.

With *sārṣapa* (*sārṣapa*),³⁴¹ the wind becomes defective (*vātavaiguṇya*), there is constipation (*ānāha*), and lumps (*granthi*) start to appear. With leadwort (*pālaka* → *citraka*)^{xli}, there is weakness in the neck, and speech gets jumbled.³⁴²

339 At 1.2.6 (**vulgate**), Ḍalhaṇa glosses hoarseness (*pāruṣya*) as *vāgrūkṣatā*, “a rough, dry voice.”

340 At 6.54.10 (**vulgate**), Ḍalhaṇa glosses loose stool (*viḍbheda*) as *dravapurīṣatā*, “having liquid stool.”

341 *Sārṣapa* would normally mean “connected with mustard,” and excessive consumption of mustard oil can be harmful. However, the *Sauśrutaniḥṣaṇṭu* (156) gives *rakṣoghṇā* as a synonym for *sārṣapā*. This can be *Semecarpus anacardium*, L.f., which has some poisonous parts.

342 The verse in the Nepalese version ends with a plural verb that does not agree with the dual of the sentence subject.

xxxix *Abrus precatorius*, L.? Cf. RRS 21.14.; see AVS 1.10, NK #6, Potter 168.

xl *Aconitum napellus*, L.; see AVS 1.47, NK #38, Potter 4 f.

xli *Plumbago zeylanica* (indica? rosea?), L.; see Rā. 6.124, ADPS 119, NK #1966, 1967

With the one called ‘muddy’ (*kardama*)^{xlii}, there is a discharge (*praseka*), the faeces pour out, and the eyes turn yellow. The ‘Virāṭa’s plant’ (*vairāṭaka*)^{xliii} causes pain in the body and illness in the head. Paralysis of one’s arms and legs and trembling are said to be caused by mustaka (*mustaka*).³⁴³

-> ativiṣa

15b With great aconite (*mahāviṣa*) one’s limbs grow weak, there is a burning feeling and swelling of the belly.³⁴⁴

Look up
the ca. ref-
erence.

16a With puṇḍarīka (*puṇḍarīka*), one’s eyes go red, and one’s belly becomes distended.³⁴⁵

16b With mūlaka (*mūlaka*), one’s body is drained of colour and the limbs are paralysed.³⁴⁶

17a With hālāhala (*Aconite*), a man turns a dark colour (*dhyāma*), and gasps.³⁴⁷

17b With atis root (*śṛṅgīviṣa*)^{xliv}, one gets violent knots (*granthi*) and stabbing pains in the heart.³⁴⁸

18a With markāṭa (*monkey*), one leaps up, laughs, and bites.³⁴⁹

343 The substitution in MS NAK 5-333 affecting 15cd is caused by an eye-skip to the word *viṣeṇa* in 2.17. *Mustaka* commonly refers to *Cyperus rotundus*, L.; the root is used in āyurveda but is not poisonous. However other dictionaries list *mustaka* amongst serious poisons, for example *Rājanighaṇṭu* (22 v. 42) and *Rasaratnasamuccaya* 16, v. 80. However, its ancient identity is still doubtful.

344 The poisonous root great poison (*mahāviṣa*) is not clearly identifiable, although *viṣa* is commonly aconite. Verse 6 above notes that there are several kinds of aconite.

345 The word *puṇḍarīka* very commonly means sacred lotus, *Nelumbo nucifera*, Gaertn. The entire plant is edible and cannot be the poison intended here. **gvdb** noted that this poison is unidentified and that it is also listed as a poison in *Carakasamhitā*.23.12.

346 The word *mūlaka* very commonly means the radish, *Raphanus sativus*, L. The root is edible and cannot be the poison intended here. **gvdb** noted that this poison is unidentified.

347 Identification of *hālāhala* is uncertain. It may simply be a mythical poison, or its specific identity may have been lost over the centuries. Late *nighaṇṭus* identify it as *stomaka* = *vatsanābha*, i.e., *Aconitum napellus*, L. (*Soḍhalanighaṇṭu* p.43). Ḍalhaṇa on 5.2.17 (**vulgate**) interprets our “gasps” as “the man laughs and grinds his teeth.” But this gloss is probably displaced and intended to apply to verse 2.18.

348 **gvdb** noted that *vatsanābha* and *śṛṅgīviṣa* are two different varieties of poisonous Aconites that are difficult to distinguish.

349 **gvdb** said of *markāṭa*, “an unidentified vegetable poison.” Cf. **suve-2000** for synonyms

xlii unknown; see ?

xliii unknown; see ?

xliv *Aconitum heterophyllum*, Wall. ex Royle; see AVS 1.42, NK #39

- 18b-19a Experts have said that one should know that the thirteen highly potent tuber-poisons, which are mentioned here, have ten qualities (*guṇa*).
- 19b-20a The ten are:
- dry (*rūkṣa*),
 - hot,
 - sharp,
 - rarified (*sūkṣma*),
 - fast-acting,
 - pervasive (*vyavāyin*),
 - expansive (*vikāsin*),
 - limpid (*viśada*),
 - light, and
 - indigestible.
- 20b Because of dryness, it may cause inflammation of the wind; because of heat it inflames the choler and blood. Because of the sharpness it unhinges the mind, and it cuts through the connections with the sensitive points (*marman*). Because it is rarified it can infiltrate and distort the parts of the body.³⁵⁰
- 22 Because it is fast-acting it kills quickly, and because of its pervasiveness it affects one's whole physical constitution (*prakṛti*).³⁵¹ Because of its expansiveness it enters into the humour (*doṣa*)s, bodily constituents (*dhātu*)s, and even the impurities. Because it is limpid it overflows, and because it is light it is difficult to treat. Because it is indigestible it is hard to eliminate. Therefore, it causes suffering for a long time.
- 24 Any poison that is instantly lethal, whether it be stationary, mobile, or artificial, will be known to have all ten of these qualities.

Slow-acting poison

- 25cd-26 A poison that is old or destroyed by anti-toxic medicines, or else dried up by blazing fire, wind, or sunshine, or which has just lost its qualities

that lead to the non-toxic jujube tree.

³⁵⁰ We read the active *vikaroti* with Ḍalhaṇa against the transmitted passive *vikriyeta*, since it must be the parts of the body that are distorted, not the poison.

³⁵¹ Ḍalhaṇa on 5.2.22 (**vulgate**) explained this as “takes the form of pervading the whole body (*akhiladehavyāptirūpam*).”

- by itself,³⁵² becomes a slow-acting poison (*dūṣṭviṣa*).³⁵³ Because it has lost its potency it is no longer perceived. Because it is surrounded by phlegm (*kapha*) it has an aftermath that lasts for a very long time.
- 27 If he is suffering from this, the colour of his stools changes, he gets sourness and a bad taste with great thirst. Stammering and close to death, wandering about, he may feel faint, giddy, and aroused.³⁵⁴
- 28 If it lodges in his stomach (*āmāśaya*), he becomes sick because of wind and phlegm; if it lodges in his intestines (*pakvāśaya*), he becomes sick because of wind and choler. A man's hair and limbs fall away and he looks like a bird whose wings have been chopped off.
- 29a–c If it lodges in one of the body tissues such as chyle (*rasa*), it causes the diseases arising from the body tissues, that have been said to be wrong.³⁵⁵ and it rapidly becomes inflamed on days that are nasty because of cold and wind.
- 29d–31 Listen to its initial symptoms (*liṅga*): it causes heaviness due to sleep, yawning, disjunction (*viśleṣa*) and horripilation (*harṣa*) and a bruising of the limbs (*aṅgamarda*).³⁵⁶ Next, it causes intoxication from food (*annamada*) and indigestion, loss of appetite (*arocaka*), the condition of having a skin disease (*koṭha*) with round blotches (*maṇḍala*),³⁵⁷ **dwindling away (*kṣaya*) of flesh**, swelling of the feet, hands, and face, **the fever called *pralepaka***, vomiting and diarrhoea.³⁵⁸ The slow-acting poison might cause **wheezing, thirst and fever, and it might also cause distension of the abdomen**.
- 32 These various disorders are of many different types: one poison may produce madness, while another one may cause constipation (*ānāha*), and yet another may ruin the semen. One may cause **emaciation**, while

352 Ḍalhaṇa specified that this refers to the ten qualities that are mentioned above (5.2.26 (**vulgate**)).

353 Ḍalhaṇa cited this verse at 1.46.83 (**vulgate**) while explaining *dūṣṭviṣa*.

354 Similar symptoms of slow-acting poison are described at 2.7.11–13 (**vulgate**) in the context of contamination dropsy (*duṣyodara*). This this may explain why the vulgate inserted reference to this disease at this point.

355 The expression *ayathāyathoktān* “stated to be unsuitable” is hard to understand here, but is clearly transmitted in the Nepalese version.

356 Ḍalhaṇa 5.2.30ab (**vulgate**) glossed “disjunction” as the loss of function of the joints in regard to movement.

357 The last ailment could perhaps be ringworm.

358 The *pralepaka* fever was described by Ḍalhaṇa, at 6.39.52 (**vulgate**), as an accumulation of phlegm in the joints. Its symptoms are described in 6.39.54

another pallid skin disease (*kuṣṭha*).

- 33 Something is “corrupted” by repetitively keeping to bad locations, times, foods, and sleeping in the daytime. Or, traditionally, “corrupting poison” (slow-acting poison (*dūṣī-viṣa*)) is so called because it may corrupt (*dūṣayet*) the body tissue (*dhātu*)s.

34- The stages of toxic shock

In the first shock of having taken a stationary poison, a person’s tongue becomes dark brown and stiff, he grows faint, and panics.

- 35 In the second, he trembles, feels exhausted, has a burning feeling, as well as a sore throat. When the poison reaches the stomach (*āmāśaya*), it causes pain in the chest (*hṛd*).
- 36 In the third, his palate goes dry, he gets violent pain (*śūla*) in the stomach (*āmāśaya*), and his eyes become weak, swollen and yellow.
- 37 In the fourth shock, it causes the intestines and stomach to be exhausted (*sāda*), he gets hiccups, a cough, a rumbling in the gut (*antra*), and his head becomes heavy too.
- 38 In the fifth he dribbles phlegm (*kapha*), goes a bad colour, his ribs crack (*parśvabheda*), all his humours are irritated, and he also has a pain in his intestines (*pakvādhāna*).
- 39a In the sixth, he loses consciousness and he completely loses control of his bowels.
- 39b In the seventh, there are breaks in his shoulders, back and loins, and he stops breathing.³⁵⁹

Remedies for the stages of slow poisoning

- 40 In the first shock of the poison, the physician should make the man, who has vomited and been sprinkled with cold water, drink an antidote (*agada*) mixed with with honey and ghee.
- 41a In the second, he should make the man who has vomited and been purged drink as before;

³⁵⁹ Here at 5.2.24 (**vulgate**) Ḍaḥaṇa glossed *sannirodha* as “complete cessation, i.e., of breath” (*sannirodhaḥ samyānnirodhaḥ, ucchvāsasya iti śeṣaḥ*). The manuscripts all read *skanda* where *skandha* must be intended; this confusion is known from Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit (**edge-1953**).

- 41b on the third, drink an antidote and a beneficial nasal medicine (*nasya*) as well as an eye salve (*añjana*).
- 42a In the fourth, the physician should make him drink an antidote that is salt with a little oil.³⁶⁰
- 42b In the fifth, he should be prescribed the antidote together with a decoction (*kvātha*) of honey and liquorice.
- 43 In the sixth, the cure (*siddhi*) is the same as for diarrhoea. And in the seventh, he perishes.³⁶¹
- 44 In between any one of these shocks, once the above treatment has been done, he should give the patient the following cold gruel (*yavāgū*) together with ghee and honey, that will take away the poison.
- 45–46 A gruel (*yavāgū*) made of the following items in a stewed juice (*niḥk-vātha*) destroys the two poisons: luffa gourd,³⁶² wild celery,³⁶³ velvet-leaf, sunflower,³⁶⁴ heart-leaved moonseed, myrobalan siris, and selu

360 At 6.52.30 (**vulgate**) Ḍalhaṇa noted that *sindhu* can be interpreted as salt (*saindhava*).

361 The vulgate text here is quite different, recommending that the patient have medicated powder blown up his nose. It may be possible to detect the evolution of the Nepalese अवसीदेत् to the vulgate's अवपीडश्. The vulgate version is hard to construe, and we see Ḍalhaṇa struggling to interpret it in his commentary on 5.2.43ab (**vulgate**). This sternutatory is, however, recommended in the Nepalese version at 5.5.30ab (**vulgate**), for the seventh shock of poisoning by a striped snake (*rājimat*). It is possible the text migrated from that location to this.

Another difference at this point is that the Nepalese version also does not support the vulgate's passage on the crow's foot (*kākapada*) therapy (**wuja-2003**). The same is the case at 5.5.24 (**vulgate**) and the clear description at 5.5.45 (**vulgate**), in neither of which is the therapy supported in the Nepalese version. This therapy seems unknown to the Nepalese transmission. Perhaps the therapy migrated into the vulgate *Suśrutasaṃhitā* from the *Carakasaṃhitā* 6.23.66–67 (**cara-trikamji3**).

362 At 4.10.8 (**vulgate**) Ḍalhaṇa glossed कोशवती as देवदाली and at 4.18.20 (**vulgate**) as कटुकोशातकी, vocabulary pointing to *Cucumis cylindrica*, *Cucumis actangula* or *Luffa echinata*. See glossary under luffa.

363 A plant often cited in *Suśrutasaṃhitā*, but rarely in *Carakasaṃhitā* (**gvdb**). Ḍalhaṇa glossed it here, 5.2.45 (**vulgate**), as *ajamodā*, wild celery, but noted that others consider it to be *moraṭa*, rajmahal hemp. There is considerable complexity surrounding the identification of *moraṭa*/*mūrvā* and related synonyms (**gvdb**). Taking *agnika* as a short reference to *agnimantha*, often identified as migraine tree, might be plausible, since that is antitoxic or anti-inflammatory, but such a short reference is not known elsewhere.

364 At 5.2.45 (**vulgate**) Ḍalhaṇa said that this plant has leaves like the *paṭola*, pointed gourd, **gvdb** argued plausibly that this is a synonym for *arkapuṣpī*, panacea twiner, as Ḍalhaṇa also stated in 1.45.120 (**vulgate**), and the leaves of *Holostemma* and *Trichosanthes* are indeed strikingly similar. The appearance of the plant, a creeper with sun-

plum, white siris, **the two kinds of turmeric**,³⁶⁵ and the two kinds of poison berry,³⁶⁶ hogweed, peas, **the three heating spices**, the two kinds of Indian sarsaparilla³⁶⁷ **and blue water-lily**.

like flowers, fits the name. But there remains much controversy about the identities of these candidates (**adps**).

365 I.e., turmeric and Indian barberry.

366 I.e., poison berry and yellow-berried nightshade.

367 I.e., country sarsaparilla and black creeper.

The invincible ghee

- 47–49 There is a famous ghee called “Invincible” (*ajeya*). It rapidly destroys all poisons but is itself unconquered. It is prepared with a mash (*kalka*) of the following plants: liquorice, crape jasmine, costus, deodar, peas, **Indian madder**, cardamom and cherry, cobra’s saffron, blue water-lily, sugar, embelia, sandalwood, cassia cinnamon, beautyberry, rosha grass, the two turmeric³⁶⁸ the two Indian nightshades,³⁶⁹ the two kinds of Indian sarsaparilla,³⁷⁰ beggarweed, and **heart-leaf sida**.

Curing the ‘slow-acting’ poison

- 50–52 Someone suffering from “slow-acting poison (*dūṣīviṣa*)” should be well sweated, and purged both top and bottom. Then he should be made to drink the following **eminent** antidote which removes “slow-acting poison:”
Take long pepper, rosha grass, spikenard, **lodh tree**, **cardamom**, natron, scented pavonia, red chalk, as well as gold, and pondweed.
This antitoxin, taken with honey, eliminates slow-acting poison. It is called the “enemy of slow-acting poison (*dūṣīviṣāri*),” and it is not prohibited in other situations.
- 53–54 If there are any other side-effects (*upadrava*), such as fever, a burning feeling, hiccups, constipation (*ānāha*), depletion of the semen, distension, diarrhoea, fainting, skin problems, bellyache (*jaṭhara*), madness, trembling, then one should treat each one in its own terms, using anti-toxic medicines.
- 55 For a prudent person, the slow-acting poison can be cured (*sādhya*) immediately. It is treatable (*yāpya*) if it is of a year’s standing. Other than this, it should be avoided for the person who eats unwholesome things.

³⁶⁸ I.e., turmeric and Indian barberry.

³⁶⁹ I.e., poison berry and yellow-berried nightshade.

³⁷⁰ I.e., country sarsaparilla and black creeper.

Kalpasthāna 3: Poisonous Insects and Animals

Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.³⁷¹

Translation

- 1 And now we shall explain the rule (*kalpa*) that is the required knowledge about mobile poisons.³⁷²
- 3 The full explanation about the sixteen carriers (*adhiṣṭhāna*) of the mobile poisons, that have been mentioned by me in brief, will be stated.³⁷³
- 4 In that context, they are:³⁷⁴
 - gaze and breath,
 - teeth, nails, and bites
 - urine and faeces,
 - **menstrual blood**,
 - semen,
 - **tail**,
 - **contact with saliva**,
 - nipping with the mouth

Come back to the issue of “kalpa”. Look up passages in the Kośa.

³⁷¹ [HIML](#): IA, 291–292.

³⁷² In contrast to stationary, plant poisons. No reference is made to Dhanvantari ([birc-2021](#)).

³⁷³ “Carrier” for base, foundation (*adhiṣṭhāna*) aims to capture the idea that the author will describe the creatures in which poisons inhere.

³⁷⁴ The content of this section is presented as a table, for clarity for the contemporary reader and mindful of the theoretical issues surrounding notational variation, including the “symbolic rewriting” and the modification of “expressive capacities” discussed by [saru-2016](#). For further discussion, see [wuja-2021](#).

³⁷⁵ This interpretation comes from Ḍaḷhaṇa on 5.3.4 (**vulgate**), but he reads विशर्धित.

- (*mukhasaṃdaṃśā*),
- fart (*avaśardhita*),³⁷⁵
 - **anus**,³⁷⁶
 - bones,
 - bile,
 - bristles (*śūka*), and
 - corpses.

5 In that context,

<i>location of the poison</i>	<i>creatures</i> ³⁷⁷
in their breath and gaze	divine snakes
in their fangs	the ones on earth ³⁷⁸
in their nails, mouths and fangs	cats, dogs, monkeys, men (<i>nara</i>), ³⁷⁹ crocodiles, frogs, ‘cook-fish’ (<i>pākamatsya</i>), ³⁸⁰ monitor lizards, cone snails (<i>śambūka</i>), ‘poisonous snakes’ (<i>pracalāka</i>), ³⁸¹ geckos (<i>gr̥hagoḍikā</i>), ³⁸² four-footed insects and others
in their urine and faeces	lice (<i>kiṭiṭa</i>), ‘flat insects’ (<i>picciṭā</i>), ‘orange-dwellers’ (<i>kaṣāyavāsika</i>), ‘pepper snakes’ (<i>sarṣapaka</i>), ‘angry beetles’ (<i>toṭaka</i>), dung beetles (<i>varcaḥkīṭa</i>), and ‘pot insects’ (<i>kaunḍinya</i>)
in their semen	mice

376 Ḍalhaṇa on 5.3.4 (**vulgate**) noted this reading.

377 Many of these names are mere dubious placeholders.

378 Ḍalhaṇa on 5.3.5 (**vulgate**) cited the otherwise unknown authority Sāvitra on the topic of poisonous snakes (HIML: ???, ???).

379 Probably dittography from the previous word, monkey (*vānara*). But it is supported in both Nepalese witnesses, so it must go back to an earlier exemplar.

380 MS KL 699 separates the words पाक and मत्स्य with a *daṇḍa*, indicating that the scribe thought they were separate terms. Ḍalhaṇa thought this was a kind of fiery insect (5.3.5 (**vulgate**)).

381 *Arthaśāstra* 14.1.14, 23 (**oliv-2013**), where it might also be a chameleon, but the latter are not venomous.

382 The scribe of MS NAK 5-333 noted in the margin that some of his sources read गल-गोडिका, which is the name of a snake known also in the *Carakasamhitā* and elsewhere in literature. Hemacandra’s *Abhidhānacintāmaṇi* (4.364) mentions that गृहगोडिका and गृहगोलिका are synonyms (**radh-1876**).

<i>location of the poison</i>	<i>creatures</i>
in their stings (śūla)	scorpions, 'earth scorpions' (viśvambhara), wasps (varaki), ³⁸³ fish, crabs (uccīṭiṅga), and 'wing-scorpions' (patraṇṣcika)
in their saliva, nails, urine, feces, blood, semen and fangs	spiders
in the bites of their mouths	flies, wasps (kaṇabha) and leeches
in the bites of their mouths, in their fangs, faces, †, farts, anuses and feces	'speckle-heads' (citraśīrṣa), 'lids' (śārava), 'bellied' (kuṣṭita), 'wood-enemies' (dārukāri), 'liquors' (medaka), and 'darts' (śārikā).

Table 2: Passage 5, expressed in tabular format.

- 6 The enemies of the king pollute the waters, roads and foodstuffs in enemy territory. The experienced physician, who has learned how to purify things, should clean up those polluted things.
- 7 Polluted water is slimy and smells of tears.³⁸⁴ It is covered with froth and covered with streaks. The frogs and fish die, the birds are crazed and, along with the wetland creatures, they wander about aimlessly.
- 8 Men, horses and elephants who swim in it experience vomiting, delusion, fever, swelling and sharp pains.³⁸⁵ He should try to purify that

³⁸³ वरटी is a wasp; वरकि in the Nepalese MSS may be an alternant of this word. Ḍalhaṇa on 5.3.5 (**vulgate**) remarked that some interpreted वरकिमत्स्य as two items, "wasp and fish," others as a single one, "wasp-fish."

³⁸⁴ अस normally means "tears," but rarely means "blood."

³⁸⁵ On the polysemy of elephant/snake (nāga), see seme-1979.

- polluted water, after curing their ailments.
- 9 And so, he should burn axlewood and garjan oil tree, as well as corky coral tree, with crimson trumpet-flower tree and small-flowered crape myrtle and weaver's beam tree, and with golden shower tree and white catch tree. Then he should sprinkle that ash, cold, on the waters.
- 10–11 And in the same way, putting a handful of the ash in a pot, one may also purify water that one wants.
If any one of the limbs of cows, horses, elephants, men or women, touch a place on the ground that enemies have spoiled with poison, or a ford or rock or a flat surface, then it swells up and burns and its hair and nails fall out on that place.³⁸⁶
- 12 In that situation, he should grind up country sarsaparilla together with all the aromatic items, with alcoholic drinks. And then he should sprinkle the paths that need to be used with waters mixed with mud.³⁸⁷
And if there exists another path, he should go by that.³⁸⁸
- 13 When grasses and foods are polluted, people collapse, fall unconscious. And others vomit. They get loose stool (*viḍbheda*) or they die. One should apply to them the therapy as described.
- 14–15 Alternatively, one should wipe various musical instruments with antidotes that remove poison and then play them. What is called the most excellent paste for a musical instrument is certain minerals³⁸⁹ together with gold and sarsaparilla, and a portion of of nutgrass equal to that,

386 "Swells up" translates an unclear reading that was probably शूलति, which may be an irregular form of √शू, श्वा, श्वि (**whit-root**).

387 Our "alcoholic drinks" translates सुरा. For a discussion of this term at our period see **mchu-2021a**.

388 Ḍalhana on 5.3.12 (**vulgate**) cited a similar reading for the fourth pāda, but with a negative particle, "and if there is no other way, one should go by that."

389 "Certain minerals" translates तारावितार, the unanimous reading of the Nepalese witnesses. But the meaning of this expression is not clear and may even refer to plants, like the other ingredients. The vulgate reads तारः सुतारः, which is also not very clear. However, Ḍalhana on 5.3.14 (**vulgate**) identified these as "silver" and "mercury." This is highly unlikely to be a correct understanding of the passage. Historically, mercury is not naturally present in the South Asian peninsula (**watt-1896**) and the word पारद that Ḍalhana used is probably a loan-word from Persian (**stei-pers**). Mercurial compounds are not reliably attested in South Asia until two or three centuries after the composition of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* at the earliest. The currently available "śāstric" recension of the *Arthaśāstra* that is datable to 175–300 CE (**oliv-2013**) does not mention mercury (*ibid*, 534). See further the study by **wuja-2013b**.

- together with the bile called “brown cow”.³⁹⁰ By the sound of the musical instrument, even terrible poisons that may be present at that place are destroyed.
- 16 If there is smoke or wind that is affected by poison then birds are dazed and fall to the ground. People get coughs, colds, and head illnesses, and acute eye diseases.³⁹¹
- 17 The smoke and air can be purified by putting into the air: lac, turmeric, Himalayan monkshood, and myrobalan, with Himalayan mayapple, costus, cardamom,³⁹² and peas, and beautyberry.

write footnote: don't repeat
ativīṣā; vulgate similar to H.

The origin of poison

- 18 As it is told, the arrogant demon called Kaiṭabha created an obstacle for lotus-born Brahmā, at the very time that he was creating these creatures.³⁹³
- 19 Pitiless Fury took a body and burst out of the mouth of furious Brahmā's store of fiery energy.³⁹⁴
- 20 He burned that great, thundering, apocalyptic demon. Then, after bringing about the annihilation of that demon, his amazing fiery energy increased.
- 21 And so, there was a sinking down (*viṣāda*) of the Daityas. Observing that, it was named “poison (*viṣa*)” because of its ability to produce a “sinking down.”
- 22 After that, the Lord created beings and subsequently made that fury enter into creatures still and moving.
- 23–24 Water that falls from the sky to the earth has no obvious flavour. The savour of the different places it lands on enters into it. In the same way,

390 सुरेन्द्रगोप and कुरुविन्द are both uncertain, see index. Ḍalhaṇa's opinion has been followed here, but it seems fair to say that all commentators were guessing.

391 The syntax of this verse is somewhat loose; the vulgate has regularized it, smoothing out the difficulties.

392

393 At this point, the text seems to make a new beginning to the topic of toxicology, as if starting a new chapter. It is notable that no reference is made here to the famous origin story of poison in the churning of the primal milk ocean; for discussion of the sources of this account, see **bede-1967**. For reflections on this passage, connecting it with Rudra and the *Śatapathabrāhmaṇa*, see **mana-2019**.

394 “Fury” is here anthropomorphised.

- whatever substance a poison reaches, it establishes itself there and by its nature it takes on that substance's savour.³⁹⁵
- 25 Generally speaking, in a poison, all the qualities are really sharp. For this reason, every poison is known to irritate all of the humours.
- 26 Irritated and afflicted by the poison, they leave their natural functions. Poison does not get digested, so it blocks the breaths.³⁹⁶
- 27 Breathing is obstructed because its pathway is blocked by phlegm. Even if life continues, a man remains without consciousness.
- 28 Similar to semen, the poison of all angry snakes pervades the whole body, and goes to the limbs like semen because of being stirred up.
- 29 The fang of snakes is like a hook. When it gets there, it sticks inside them. That is why the unagitated poison of a snake is not released.
- 30 Sprinkling with very cold water is traditional for all cases of poisoning, because poison is declared to be extremely hot and sharp.³⁹⁷
- 31 Poison in insects is slow and not very hot, having a lot of wind and phlegm. So in cases of insect poisoning, sweating is not forbidden.
- 32cd In cases of a strike or a bite, the poison may, of its own accord, stay there.
- 33–35ab †Having come upon a body,³⁹⁸ in the case of corpses that have been pierced by a poisoned arrow and bitten by a snake, someone who eats the poisoned flesh of a recent corpse out of carelessness will suffer with illness according to the poison, or even die. And therefore, the flesh of those should not be eaten when they have just died.
- It is admissable after three quarters of an hour, but without the poisoned arrow and the snakebite.
- 35.1 [At this point an Upajāti verse is added in the margin of K but is not fully legible; the version of the text in H is also incomplete and not fully comprehensible.]³⁹⁹

395 The scribal emendation in MS Kathmandu NAK 5-333 of नियच्छति to निगच्छति suggests that the scribe had more than one manuscript before him, one of them representing the reading of the vulgate recension.

396 Probably a reference to the five breaths. Ḍalhaṇa referred to winds (वात), but this does not seem correct since it is a reference to humours rather than breaths.

397 The verb पठ् “is declared, read aloud” here could possibly suggest that the author is working within a written, not oral, tradition.

398 “Having come upon” translates प्रख्याप्य, which is hard to interpret unless it is a rare form connected with the sense “to see.”

399 *Mādhavanidāna*, 69.20–21 (**madhava1**) has verses that are directly parallel to this section:

darvīkarāṇāṃ viṣam āśughāti sarvāṇi coṣṇe dviguṇībhavanti ajīrṇapittātapapīḍiteṣu bāleṣu

- 35.3 †When, in a wound, the poison that is connected with these qualities runs, ...Therefore, not everything that is damaged by poison and eaten causes death.
400
- 35.1 [śloka in the MSS that aren't in the vulgate. The first line doesn't scan. Witness K adds a part of the start of this in the bottom margin. This material is repeated at 3.39.2 in MS H.]
- 35cd & 36cd One designates a person who has diarrhoea of feces looking like soot (*grhadhūma*) with wind,⁴⁰¹ and who vomits foam, as “someone who has drunk poison.”
- 37 Therefore, fire burns a heart that is pervaded by poison. For, having pervaded of its own accord the location of consciousness, it abides.⁴⁰²

Patients beyond help

- 38 Patients who should not be accepted include: those who have been bitten under a peepul tree, in a temple, in a cemetery, at an ant-hill, at dawn or dusk, at a crossroads, under Yama's asterism,⁴⁰³ under the Great Bear and people who have been bitten in lethal spots.
- 39 The poison of cobras kills rapidly. They all gain twice the intensity in those who have indigestion, those who are afflicted by bile or wind, old people, children and the hungry.
- 39.1 In those whose who are mad or intoxicated, or who suffer from anxiety, or who are unable to tolerate its various strengths, it becomes sharp. †...

vṛddheṣu bubhukṣiteṣu 20

kṣīnakṣate mohini kuṣṭhayukte rūkṣe 'bale garbhavatīṣu cāpi

śastrakṣate yasya na raktam eti rājyo latābhiś ca na saṁbhavanti 21. This passage is the only occurrence in the ayurvedic text corpus that relates to the Nepalese version of the *Suśrutasaṁhitā* at this point. This suggests that Mādhavakara (fl. ca. 700, Bengal) knew and used the Nepalese version.

400 At this point, witness H inserts a marginal Indravajrā verse about diseases that afflict immoral women.

401 गृहधूम is not a plant in this context *pace moni-sans*. See the discussion in note 307, p. 98.

402 Ḍaḥaṇa said that someone who has died from drinking poison has a heart that cannot be burned because it is pervaded by poison (5.3.37 (**vulgate**)). But the sense of the Nepalese MSS is the opposite.

403 याम्ये means “southerly” but Ḍaḥaṇa on 5.3.38 (**vulgate**) interpreted it as “in Yama's direction” as “under the seventh asterism.”

material
corres-
ponds to
SS.1.45.205ab,
where it
describes
how alcohol
affects the
body.

- 39.2
3.40cd–3.41 One should reject someone overcome by poison who **does not bleed** when cut with a knife, where weals do not appear as a result of lashes,⁴⁰⁴ or where there is no horripilation because of cold water, whose mouth is **crooked**, whose hair is falling out of his head. A man who is fatigued and those who stammer,⁴⁰⁵
- 3.42 one who has a black and red swelling at the site of the bite, with lockjaw, should be avoided. The same goes for someone who has a solid plug emerge from their mouth and someone who has blood running from above and below and
- 3.43ab The physician should also avoid a person who has fangs that have not fallen out quickly.⁴⁰⁶

404 Ḍalhaṇa, on 5.3.40 (**vulgate**), glossed लताभिस् “by means of whips,” as “when the body is struck by whips.”

405 nāsāvasāda & plural sakaṇṭhabhaṅgāḥ

406 The grammatical verb-form परिवर्जयित “he should avoid,” opt., 3rd, sg., is unusual. **reno-1940** documented such forms from the *Aitareyabrāhmaṇa* onwards. **ober-2003** showed that the form is well-documented in *manuscripts* of the *Mahābhārata*, but has been edited out of the printed critical edition in almost all cases. Cf. also **kuli-2006**. The concern about a patient who “has fangs that have not fallen out” is hard to understand. The word दंष्ट्रा does not mean human teeth (दन्त). We therefore prefer to interpret this as a patient where the fangs of a venomous creature remain in the bite-wound. This requires construing the expression as a *bahuvrīhi* compound: दंष्ट्रा or दंष्ट्र + अनिपातः.

Kalpasthāna 4: Snakes and Invenomation

Introduction

The fourth chapter of the Kalpasthāna of the *Suśrutasamhitā* addresses the topic of snake bites and snake venom. Unusually for the Nepalese version of the *Suśrutasamhitā*, the discussion is framed as a question from Suśruta to the wise Dhanvantari. Suśruta's questions are about the number of snakes, how they are classified, the symptoms of their bites and the pulses or stages of toxic shock experienced by a victim of snakebite and related topics. The taxonomy of snakes is presented in tabular form in Figures 1 and 2.⁴⁰⁷

Literature

A brief survey of this chapter's contents and a detailed assessment of the existing research on it to 2002 was provided by Meulenbeld.⁴⁰⁸ There also exists an substantial herpetological literature from colonial India as well as more recent studies of snakes in the context of cultural and religious life.

The ophiological literature of the colonial period began in the late nineteenth century with the work of Fayrer, whose publication included striking colour paintings of snakes.⁴⁰⁹ **fayr-1874** provided a biological taxonomy of snakes as well as chapters on mortality statistics during the

407 On the idea of notational variants in scientific translation, see **elsh-2008saru-2016wuja-2021**.

408 **HIML**: IA, 292–294. In addition to the translations mentioned by Meulenbeld (**HIML**: IB, 314–315), a translation of this chapter was included in **shar-1999**.

409 **fayr-1874**, first published in 1872.

nineteenth century, treatment and effects of poison, and experimental data. **ewar-1878** included descriptions of appearance and behaviour of poisonous snakes and sometimes their local names and reproducing Fayrer's illustrations.⁴¹⁰ **wall-1913** provided a useful analysis of the medical effects of snake envenomation in India arranged by the varied symptomology of different snakes. He also discussed the difference between the symptoms of toxicity and fright (69–75) and also the difficulties arising out of uncertainty about the effects of snake-bite (124–126). The *Suśrutasamhitā* too recognized the emotional and somatic effects of fright (see note 422 below). **wall-1921** provided a wealth of detail of the snakes of Sri Lanka, including line drawings.

doni-2015 provided a good survey of snakes as protagonists in religious literature from the *Atharvaveda* through the epics, *Purāṇas* and Buddhist literature. **seme-1979** traced semiotics of the term *nāga* through Vedic, Pali and Sanskrit literature. **slou-2016** discussed the *Suśrutasamhitā*'s *Kalpasthāna* as a precursor and influence on later Tantric traditions of snake-bite interpretation and therapy. In particular, the Tantric *Kriyākālaguṇottara* text that Slouber presented divided snakes into two basic categories, divine and mundane, as the *Suśrutasamhitā* does.⁴¹¹ But unlike the *Suśrutasamhitā*, in the *Kriyākālaguṇottara* the chief taxonomic principle for both groups is the four *varṇas*.

A discussion of this chapter specifically in the light of the Nepalese manuscripts was published by Harimoto.⁴¹² After a close comparative reading of lists of poisonous snakes, Harimoto concluded that, “the Nepalese version is internally consistent while the [vulgate] editions are not.” Harimoto showed how the vulgate editions had been adjusted textually to smooth over inconsistencies, and gave insights into these editorial processes.⁴¹³

Translation

- 1 Now we shall explain the procedure (*kalpa*) about what should be known concerning the venom in those who have been bitten by

⁴¹⁰ Calling his work a supplement to **fayr-1874**, but also being cited by Fayrer, **ewar-1878** evidently also collected local indigenous knowledge from his “snake-man” (p. 22).

⁴¹¹ **slou-2016**.

⁴¹² **hari-2011**.

⁴¹³ The two editions that Harimoto noted, **vulgate** and **bhat-1889**, present identical texts.

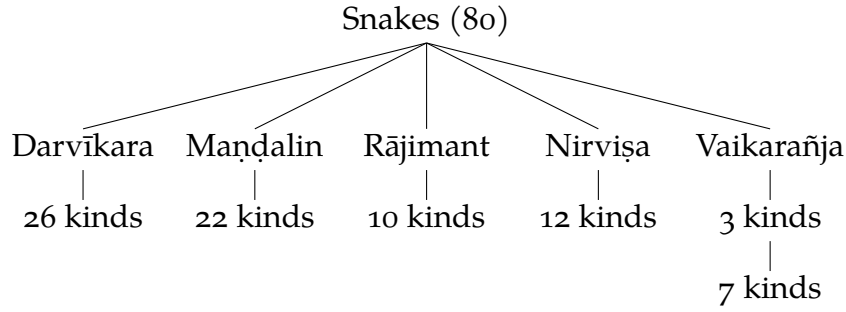


Figure 1: The taxonomy of snakes in the vulgate, 5.4.9–13ab (**vulgate**).

snakes.⁴¹⁴

3 Suśruta, grasping his feet, questions the wise Dhanvantari, the expert in all the sciences.

4 “My Lord, please speak about the number of snakes, and their divisions, the symptoms of someone who has been bitten, and the knowledge about the successive shocks (*vega*) of poisoning”.⁴¹⁵

5 On hearing his query, that distinguished physician spoke.

“The venerable snakes such as Vāsukī and Takṣaka are uncountable.

6–9ab “They are snake-lords who support the earth, as bright as the ritual fire, ceaselessly roaring, raining and scorching. They hold up the earth, with its oceans, mountains and continents. If they are angered, they can destroy the whole world with a breath and a look. Honour to them. They have no role here in medicine.

“The ones that I shall enumerate in due order are those mundane ones with poison in their fangs who bite humans.”⁴¹⁶

9cd–10 “There are eighty kinds of snakes and they are divided in five ways: Darvīkaras, Maṇḍalins, Rājīmats, and Nirviṣas. And Vaikarañjas that are traditionally of three kinds.”⁴¹⁷

414 The *Sarvāṅgasundarī*, commenting on 1.16.17 (**kunt-1939**), glossed कल्प as प्रयोग.

415 The expression “successive shocks” translates वेग, which in other contexts may mean “(natural) urge.” Here, it is rather the discrete stages or phases of physiological reaction to envenomation. Cf. the symptoms of cobra poisoning described by **wall-1913**.

416 The next few verses are discussed in detail by **hari-2011**, who shows that in the taxonomy of snakes, the Nepalese version of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* has greater internal coherence than the vulgate recension.

417 **hari-2011** translated these names as “hooded,” “spotted,” “striped,” “harmless,” and

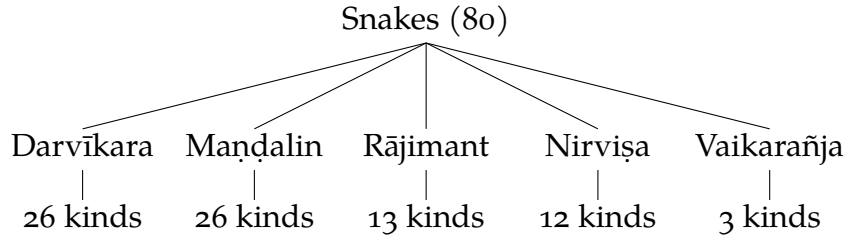


Figure 2: The taxonomy of snakes in the Nepalese version.

Or “There are 20 phanins and 6 maṇḍalins. The same number are known. There are 13 Rājimats.” Or even, “there are 20 Phanins and six of them are Maṇḍalins.” Are phanins really the same as darvikaras?

- 11 “Of those, there are twenty and six hooded snakes, and the same number of Maṇḍalins are known. There are thirteen Rājimats.⁴¹⁸
- 12 “There are said to be twelve Nirviṣas and, according to tradition, three Vaikarañjas.
- 13–14ef “If they are trodden on, ill-natured or provoked or even just looking for food, those very angry snakes will bite. And that is said to happen in three ways: serpented (*sarpita*), torn (*darita*) and thirdly without venom (*nirviṣa*). Some experts on this want to add “hurt by the snake’s body”.⁴¹⁹
- 15–16 “The physician can recognize the following as “ophidian (*sarpita*)”: Where a rearing snake makes one, two or more puncture-marks of its teeth, when they are deep and without much blood,⁴²⁰ accompanied by a little ring of spots (*cuñcumālaka*),⁴²¹ lead to degeneration, and are

“hybrid.” Figure 1 shows the taxonomy described in the vulgate text; Figure 2 shows the different and more logical division of the Nepalese version of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*.

418 The phrasing of this śloka is awkward.

419 This might refer to constriction. The phrase reads like a commentarial addition rather than the main text of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*.

420 The word उद्धृत “aroused” was glossed by Ḍalhaṇa at 5.4.15 (**vulgate**) as उन्मोद्य, a word not found as such in standard dictionaries (**moni-sans; apte-prac; mayr-kurz; josi-maha**). Semantic considerations suggest that the word is not related to $\sqrt{muṭ}$ “break” or *mūta*/*mūṭa* “woven basket.” Perhaps it is related to the Tamil *மோதி* (*mōṭi*), whose meanings include “arrogance, grandeur, display” (**burr-1984**) or to faintly-documented forms like *moṭyate* “is twisted” (**CDIAL**). Ḍalhaṇa’s उन्मोद्य may thus mean “twisting up” or “making an arrogant display.”

Note that पद “puncture-mark” (more literally, “footprint”) is being used in the same sense as in 1.13.19 (**vulgate**) when describing the marks on the body where a knife scarifies the skin before leeching. See footnote 49.

421 The usual dictionary lexeme is चञ्चु, not चुञ्चु as in the Nepalese witnesses. We translate “spots” following Ḍalhaṇa and Gayadāsa on 5.4.15 (**vulgate**), where they described a group of spots or swellings at the site of the bite. On the history of the word मालक,

- close together and swollen.
- 17 Where there are streaks with blood, whether it be blue or white, the physican should recognize that to be “torn (*darita*),” having a small amount of venom.
- 18 The physician can recognize the locations of the bites of a person in a normal state as being free from poison, when the location is not swollen, and there is little corrupted blood.
- 19 The wind of a timid person who has been touched by a snake can get irritated by fear. It causes swelling.⁴²² That is “hurt by a snake’s body.”
- 20 Locations bitten by sick or frightened snakes are known to have little poison. Similarly, a site bitten by very young or old snakes has little poison.
- 21 Poison does not progress in a place frequented by eagles,⁴²³ gods, holy sages, **spirits**, and saints, or in places full of herbs that destroy poison.⁴²⁴

grammar

[Types of snake]

- 22 Darvīkara snakes are know to have hoods, to move rapidly, and to have rings, ploughs, umbrellas, crosses, and hooks on them.
- 23 Maṇḍalin snakes are known for being large and slow-moving. They are decorated with many kinds of circles. They are like a flaming fire because of their poisons.

see kief-1996.

- 422 wall-1913 remarked on the difficulty of separating toxicity symptoms from the psychosomatic effects of terror:

The gravity of symptoms due to fright does not appear to me to be sufficiently recognised, though there is no doubt in my mind that fatal cases from this cause are abundant, especially among the timid natives of this country.

Wall went on to give several case studies in which patients experienced syncope or even died as a result of bites from toxicologically harmless creatures.

- 423 Ḍalhaṇa on 5.4.21 (**vulgate**) identified the सुपर्ण as a गरुड. On the bird called सुपर्ण, **dave** too noted that it may be a synonym for Garuḍa, and in some contexts may refer to the Golden Eagle, Golden Oriole, Lammergeyer, etc. **dave** noted again that the Garuḍa is a mythical bird but may refer to the Himalayan Golden Eagle and other species of eagle. He pointed out that historically,

The original physical basis for गरुड as the नागाशी (snake-eater) was most probably the Sea-Eagle who picks up sea-snakes from the sea or sand-beach and devours them on a nearby tree... (**dave**).

Dave continued with interesting reference to Śrīharṣa’s *Nāgānanda*.

- 424 For “spirits” the Nepalese version has भूत while the vulgate reads यक्ष.

- 24 Rājimant snakes are smooth and traditionally said to be, as it were, mottled with multicoloured streaks across and above.

[Classes of snake]

- 25 Snakes that are shine like pearls and silver, and that are amber and that shine like gold, and smell sweet are traditionally thought of as being of the Brāhmaṇa caste.
- 26 Warrior snakes, however, are those that look glossy and get very angry. They have the mark of the sun, the moon, the earth, an umbrella and bitumen.
- 27 Merchant snakes may traditionally be black, shine like diamond or have a red colour or be grey like pigeons.
- 28 Any snakes that are coloured like a buffalo and a tiger, with rough skin and different colours are known as servants.⁴²⁵
- 31 All snakes that are variegated (Rājīmats) move about during the first watch of the night. The rest, on the other hand, the Maṇḍalins and the Darvīkaras, are diurnal.⁴²⁶
- 29 Wind is irritated by all hooded snakes; bile by Maṇḍalins and phlegm by those with many stripes.
- 30 Because of the two classes having greater, lesser or equal class, there is the characteristic of irritating two humours. And he will explain the opposing view that is to be known as a result of the non-union of a male and female.⁴²⁷

[Enumeration of snakes]

- 34.1 In that context, here are the Darvīkaras.
1. The Black snake (*kṛṣṇasarpa*);
 2. The Big Black (*mahākṛṣṇa*);
 3. The Black Belly (*kṛṣṇodara*);
 4. The All Black (*sarvakṛṣṇa*);⁴²⁸

⁴²⁵ Presumably “different” from the earlier-mentioned castes.

The sequence of the following three verses is slightly different from the vulgate (5.4.29–31 (**vulgate**)).

⁴²⁶ The readings of the vulgate, that Rājīmats are active in the early night, the Maṇḍalins in the later night, and Darvīkaras in the day, seem clearer.

⁴²⁷ The sense of the last phrase here is quite different from the vulgate, which says only that “details” will be explained below.

⁴²⁸ Not in vulgate.

⁴²⁹ The vulgate adds The Big Pigeon (*mahākapota*).

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------|---|
| 5. The White Pigeon
(<i>śvetakapota</i>); ⁴²⁹ | 34.2 Here the Maṇḍalins | Here the Maṇḍalins |
| 6. The Rain Cloud (<i>valāhako</i>); | | (<i>dadhimukha</i>); |
| 7. The Great Snake
(<i>mahāsarpa</i>); | | 18. The Lotus Mouth
(<i>puṇḍarikamukha</i>); |
| 8. The Conch Keeper
(<i>śaṁkhapāla</i>); | | 19. The Brown Hut Mouth
(<i>babhrūkuṭīmukha</i>); |
| 9. The Red Eye (<i>lohitākṣa</i>); | | 20. The Variegated (<i>vicitra</i>); |
| 10. The Gavedhuka (<i>gavedhuka</i>); | | 21. The Flower Sprinkle Beauty
(<i>puṣpābhikīrṇnābha</i>); |
| 11. The Snake Around
(<i>parisarpa</i>); | | 22. The Mountain Snake
(<i>girisarpa</i>); |
| 12. The Break Hood
(<i>khaṇḍaphaṇa</i>); | | 23. The Straight Snake
(<i>rjusarpa</i>); |
| 13. The Kūkuṭa (<i>kūkuṭa</i>); | | 24. The White Rip (<i>śvetadara</i>); |
| 14. The Lotus (<i>padma</i>); | | 25. The Big Head (<i>mahāśīrṣa</i>); |
| 15. The Great Lotus
(<i>mahāpadma</i>); | | and |
| 16. The Grass Flower (<i>apuṣpa</i>); | | 26. The Hungry Sting (<i>alagarda</i>); |

⁴³⁰ This seems implausible, but otherwise the list of Maṇḍalins would be short.

⁴³¹ The list is short by one item. Perhaps the one of the snakes named in the vulgate, *citramaṇḍala*, *gonasa* or *piṅgala*, should be considered here.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. The Mirror Ring
(<i>ādarśamaṇḍala</i>); | 13. The Morning Glory
(<i>pālindaka</i>); |
| 2. The White Ring
(<i>śvetamaṇḍala</i>); | 14. The Stretch (<i>tantuka</i>); |
| 3. The Red Ring (<i>raktamaṇḍala</i>); | 15. The Pale as a Flower
(<i>puṣpapāṇḍu</i>); |
| 4. The Speckled (<i>prṣata</i>); | 16. The Six Part (<i>ṣaḍaṅga</i>); |
| 5. The Gift of God (<i>devadinna</i>); | 17. The Flame (<i>agnika</i>); |
| 6. The Pilindaka (<i>pilindaka</i>); | 18. The Brown (<i>babhru</i>); |
| 7. The Big Cow Snout
(<i>vṛddhagonasa</i>); | 19. The Ochre (<i>kaṣāya</i>); |
| 8. The Jackfruit (<i>panasaka</i>); | 20. The Khaluṣa (<i>khaluṣa</i>); |
| 9. The Big Jackfruit
(<i>mahāpanasaka</i>); | 21. The Pigeon (<i>pārāvata</i>); |
| 10. The Bamboo Leaf
(<i>veṇupatraka</i>); | 22. The Hand Decoration
(<i>hastābharanaka</i>); |
| 11. The Kid (<i>śīśuka</i>); | 23. The Tatra (<i>tatra</i>); ⁴³⁰ |
| 12. The Intoxicator (<i>madanaka</i>); | 24. The Mark (<i>citraka</i>); |
| | 25. The Deer Foot (<i>eṇīpada</i>). ⁴³¹ |

34.3 Here are the Rājīmats.⁴³²

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. The Lotus (<i>punḍarīka</i>); | 7. The Grass Drier (<i>tṛṇaśoṣaka</i>); |
| 2. The Stripe Speckle (<i>rājicitra</i>); | 8. The White Jaw (<i>svetahanu</i>); |
| 3. The Finger Stripe (<i>aṅgulirāji</i>); | 9. The Grass Flower
(<i>darbhapuṣpa</i>); ⁴³³ |
| 4. The Two Finger Stripe
(<i>dvyāṅgulirāji</i>); | 10. The Red Eye (<i>lohitākṣa</i>); ⁴³⁴ |
| 5. The Drop Stripe (<i>bindurāji</i>); | 11. The Ringed (<i>cakraka</i>); |
| 6. The Mud (<i>kardama</i>); | 12. The Worm Eater (<i>kikkisāda</i>); |

34.4 Here are the Nirviṣas.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. The Rain Cloud (<i>valāhako</i>); ⁴³⁵ | 6. The Ilikinī (<i>ilikinī</i>); |
| 2. Thei Snake Flag (<i>ahipatāka</i>); | 7. The Year-Snake (<i>varṣāhika</i>); |
| 3. The White Leaf (<i>śukapatra</i>); | 8. The Two-day (<i>dvyāhika</i>); |
| 4. The Goat Swallower
(<i>ajagara</i>); | 9. The Milk Flower
(<i>kṣīrikāpuṣpa</i>); |
| 5. The Stimulator (<i>dīpyaka</i>); | 10. The Flower All (<i>puṣpasakalī</i>); |

⁴³² The following list is one item short. The vulgate text, however, has several names that do not appear in the Nepalese Rājīmat list, for example Sarṣapaka and Godhūmaka.

⁴³³ Also in the Darvīkara list.

⁴³⁴ Also in the Darvīkara list.

⁴³⁵ Also in the Darvīkara list.

11. The Chariot of Light
(*jyotīratha*);

12. The Little Tree (*vrkṣaka*);

34.5 The Vaikaraṅjas originate out of contrary unions amongst the three colours.⁴³⁶ Thus:

1. The Mākuli (*mākuli*);
2. The Poṭa Throat (*poṭagala*);
3. The Oil Stripe (*snigdharāji*);

varṇa
means "col-
our" else-
where?

Amongst those, the Mākuli (*mākuli*); is born when a male Black Snake mates with a female Cow Snout (*gonasa*), or the reverse. The Poṭa Throat (*poṭagala*) is born when a male Rājila mates with a female Cow Snout (*gonasa*) or the reverse. The Oily Stripe (*snigdharāji*) is born when a male Black Snake mates with a female Rājimat, or the reverse. Their poison is like that of their father, because it is the superior one out of the two; but others say it is like the mother. Thus eighty of these snakes have been described.

35 Amongst them, males have large eyes, tongues and heads.⁴³⁷ Females have small eyes, tongues and heads. Neuters have both characteristics, and are slow to exert themselves or be angry.⁴³⁸

36 In that context we shall give instruction in a general way about the sign of having been bitten by any of the snakes.

For what reason?

Because poison acts quickly, like a fire with an oblation, a honed sword, or a thunderbolt.⁴³⁹ And ignored for even a period of time, it can drag the patient away. There is not even an opportunity to follow the literature.⁴⁴⁰

436 The word *varṇa* in this chapter normally means "colour" not "class." ("Class is expressed by "jāti.") While *kṛṣṇasarpa* is clearly a colour-type, it is less obvious that *gonasī* is a special colour, and *rājimat* is a group of snakes.

437 The vulgate includes the snake's mouth in this and the next list.

438 The reading मन्दचेष्टाक्रोधा is an awkward compound; possibly the original reading was मन्दचेष्टाः + अक्रोधा and sandhi was applied twice.

439 Perhaps the image suggested by "a fire with an oblation" is that of the Pravargya, in which a large flame rises suddenly from the ritual fire.

440 The idea seems to be that there is no time to consult the verbose āyurvedic teachings. The "extensive meaning of the collection of statements (वाक्समूहार्थविस्तार)" is singled out as one of Āyurveda's virtues in 5.8.142 (**vulgate**). Alternatively, perhaps the patient is unable to understand what the doctor is saying to him.

And when the symptom of being bitten is stated, there will be three ways of treating it because there are three kinds of snake. Therefore we shall explain it in three ways. “For this is good for people who are ill, and it removes confusion and in this very case it prevents all symptoms”.⁴⁴¹

[Symptoms of snakebite]

- 37 In this context, the poison of a Darvīkara causes the skin, nails, eyes, mouth, urine, feces, and the bitemark to be black; there is driness, the joints hurt and the head feels heavy; the waist, back and neck feel weak; there is yawning, the voice becomes faint, there is gurgling, paralysis, dry throat, cough, wheezing, and hiccups; the wind goes upwards, the patient convulses with sharp pain, black saliva dribbles out, foam appears, the ducts (*srotas*) are blocked and every kind of pain that is due to wind.⁴⁴²

The poison of a Maṇḍalin causes the skin, nails, eyes, teeth, mouth, urine, feces, bitemark to be yellow; there is a desire for cold, a temperature, giving off fumes,⁴⁴³ a burning feeling, thirst, intoxication, fainting, fever, haemorrhaging (*śonitāgamana*), and the degeneration of the flesh and fat above and below. There is swelling, suppuration of the bite, metamorphopsia (*viparītadarśana*), anger caused by the suffering, and every kind of pain that is due to bile.⁴⁴⁴

The poison of a Rājīmat causes the skin, nails, eyes, teeth, mouth, urine, feces, and bitemark to be pale; there is a cold fever, the hair stands on

441 In the next passage, the symptoms of snake poisoning are indeed explained under three headings.

442 Cf. the similar symptoms of snake venom poisoning by the so-called Brahmin warriors of Harmatelia described by the classical author Diodorus Siculus (fl. ca. 30-60 BCE) (egge-1975).

443 The term “giving of fumes (परिधूपयन)” is not in **moni-sans** as such, although परिधूपन, परिधूमन and परिधूमायन are cited and referred to the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*. “Giving off fumes (परिधूपन)” is listed at *Suśrutasaṃhitā* 2.6.13 (**vulgate**) amongst the symptoms of urinary disease caused by phlegm. The editors note a variant reading परिधूमायन but do not tell us in which manuscript (**vulgate**). Ḍalhaṇa on 2.6.13 (**vulgate**) glossed परिधूपन as “hot all over (समन्ततस्तापः)” and in our current passage as “hot over the whole body (सर्वाङ्गसन्तापः)” (**vulgate**). See also **josi-maha**: धूमायन “अङ्गानां धूमोद्धमनमिव” citing the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*.

444 **ghos-2023** describes visual disturbances due to snake envenomation.

end, there is stiffness and swelling of the limbs including the site of the bite. There is a discharge of viscous phlegm, vomiting, itchy eyes, and a rattling sound. The breath is obstructed and there is every kind of pain due to phlegm.

- 38 In that context, “someone bitten by a male gazes upwards, by a female horizontally, and by a neuter, downwards.” One bitten by a pregnant snake has a pale face and becomes swollen (*ādhmāta*). One bitten by a recently-delivered snake is afflicted with abdominal pain and urinates with blood. One bitten by a hungry snake craves food. Those bitten by an old snake have delayed and slow reactions. And one bitten by a young snake is fast and keen. One bitten by a non-venomous snake has the characteristic mark of non-poisoning.⁴⁴⁵ Some that are bitten by a blind snake become blind. A constrictor (*ajagara*) is deadly because it swallows, not because of poison.

[Toxic Pulses]

- 39 In that context, all snake toxins have seven toxic impulses (*viṣavega*).

[**Darvīkaras**] Thus, at the first pulse of the Darvīkaras the poison corrupts the blood. That corrupted blood turns black. Because of that, blackness and a feeling of ants crawling about on the body develop.⁴⁴⁶ In the second pulse, it corrupts the flesh. That causes extreme blackness and lumps.

In the third, it corrupts the fat. That causes a discharge at the bite, heaviness of the head and an eclipse of the vision.⁴⁴⁷

In the fourth, it penetrates the trunk of the body (*koṣṭha*). From there, it irritates the humors, particularly phlegm. That causes exhaustion and oozing phlegm, and dislocation of the joints.

In the fifth pulse, it penetrates the bones. That causes breaking of the joints, hiccups and burning.

445 The grammar of अविषलिङ्गम् is not quite right; it should be a masculine or plural bahuvrīhi.

446 Strictly, we would expect a dual verb here, instead of the plural of the witnesses.

447 Ḍaḥaṇa on 5.4.39 (**vulgate**) glossed the last expression as “blockage of the vision (दृष्ट्यवरोध).”

In the sixth pulse, it penetrates the marrow. That causes humours in the seat of fire in the gut (*grahaṇī*), heaviness of the limbs, diarrhoea, pain in the heart and fainting.⁴⁴⁸

In the seventh, it penetrates the semen and greatly irritates the vyāna breath (*vyāna*), and causes the phlegm (*kapha*) to run imperceptibly out of the tubes (*srotas*). That causes the appearance of mucous (*śleṣman*), breaking of the hips, back and shoulders, impediment to all movements and shortness of breath.

[**Mandalins**] Thus, at the first pulse of the Mandalins, the poison corrupts the blood. Corrupted by that, it turns yellow. That causes a yellow appearance and a feeling of heat all over (*paridāha*).

In the second pulse, it corrupts the flesh. And that causes the limbs to be very yellow and an extreme feeling of heat all over (*paridāha*), and swelling at the bite.

In the third, it corrupts the fat. That causes a discharge at the black bite and sweating.

In the fourth, it penetrates as before and brings on fever.

In the fifth, it causes heat in all the limbs.

In the sixth and seventh, it is the same as before.

[**Rājīmats**] Thus, in the first pulse of the Rājīmats, the poison corrupts the blood. Corrupted by that, it turns yellow. It causes a person to have hair standing on end and a pale appearance.

In the second pulse, it corrupts the flesh. That causes him to become pale and to become extremely benumbed (*jāḍya*).

In the third, it corrupts the fat. That causes moistness of the bite and runny eyes and nose.

In the fourth, it is the same as before. After penetrating, it brings on manyāstambha (*stiffness of the neck*) and heaviness of the head.

In the fifth, speech is confused and there is a cold fever.

In the sixth and seventh, it is the same as before.

40 There are verses on this.

⁴⁴⁸ The “seat of fire in the gut (ग्रहणी)” is an ayurvedic organ in the digestive tract that does not correspond to any specific organ known to contemporary anatomy. For discussion, see *josi-mahameul-1974* Das 2003: 544–545.

It is well known that there are seven layers of skin (kalā) in between the bodily tissues (dhātu). Poison enters into these one by one and causes the toxic pulse (vega).

41 There is a Traditionally, that is the “pulse interval (*vegāntara*)”

42

43

44

45

Uttaratantra

Uttaratantra 17: Preventing Diseases of the Pupil

Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.⁴⁴⁹

The history of couching in India has been discussed since the nineteenth century,⁴⁵⁰

Translation

- 1 Now I shall explain the counteraction (*pratiṣedha*) of diseases located in the pupil (*dr̥ṣṭi*).
- 2 There are three curable (*sādhya*), three incurable (*asādhya*), and six mitigatable (*yāpya*) diseases located in peoples eyes. Among these, three are curable (*sādhya*). Amongst these three, the remedy (*pratīkāra*) has been stated for the one called “seeing smoke (*dhūmadarśin*)”.⁴⁵¹
- 3–5ab When the eye is inflamed (*vidagdha*) by bile and when it is inflamed by phlegm, one should apply the method for removing bile and phlegm, using nasal medicines (*nasya*), irrigation (*seka*), application of collyrium (*añjana*), liniment (*ālepa*), and medicines cooked in a

⁴⁴⁹ [HIML](#): IA, 305–306.

⁴⁵⁰ [desh-2000](#); [desh-1999](#); [bret-1826](#); [leff-2020](#); [shas-kaly](#); [jack-1884](#); [scot-1817](#); [elli-1918](#); [hend-1895](#); [fan-2005](#); [wuja-2003](#).

⁴⁵¹ This disease and its cure are described earlier (SS.6.7.39 and SS.6.10.16 (**vulgate**) respectively). The latter part of this verse is hard to construe and the text here may have been altered at an early period.

where is
cutting
with a knife
related to
remov-
ing bile or
phlegm.

crucible (*puṭapāka*), together with an eyewash (*tarpaṇa*),⁴⁵² but not cutting with a blade (*śastrakṣata*).⁴⁵³

One should drink ghee (*sarpis*) prepared with the three fruits (*triphalā*) and in the first [case where the problem is bile], and prepared with turpeth (*traivṛta*) in the latter [case, of phlegm].

And ghee prepared with tilvaka (*tailvaka*) is wholesome in both cases, or else aged ghee on its own.

5cd–7ab In a collyrium, these four compounds (*yoga*) are beneficial in both cases:

maṣī
burned
charcoal.
Find refs.

- ochre (*gairika*), Sind salt (*saindhava*), long pepper (*kṛṣṇā*) and the black soot (*maṣī*) from cow's teeth;
- Cow's flesh (*gomāṃsa*), black pepper (*marica*), siris (*śirīṣa*) and red arsenic (*manahśilā*);
- stalk (*vṛnta*) from a wood apple (*kapittha*) with honey (*madhu*);⁴⁵⁴
- or the the fruits of the velvet bean (*svayaṃgupta*).

8 The physician should make a collyrium with ground up metal (*kupyaka*),⁴⁵⁵ Asoka tree (*aśoka*), Sal tree (*śālā*), mango (*amra*), beautyberry (*priyaṃgu*), Indian lotus (*nalina*), blue lotus (*utpala*), together with hareṇu (*hareṇu*), emblic (*āmalaka*), myrobalan (*pathyā*), long pepper (*pippali*). It should be combined with ghee and honey (*kṣaudra*).

9–10 Also, when bile and phlegm have developed, the physician should apply hareṇu (*hareṇu*) with the expressed juice (*svarasa*) of the flowers from mango (*amra*) and Jambu (*jambū*) trees.

Then this collyrium, matured (*vipakva*) with ghee and honey (*kṣaudra*), should then be applied.

10–11ab Filaments (*kiñjalka*) of Indian lotus (*nalina*) and blue lotus (*utpala*), with ochre (*gairika*), and the juice of cow-dung (*gośakṛt*) are a collyrium in the form of a pill (*guḍikā*). This is good for both day and night blindness.

11cd–12ab Elixir-salve (*rasāñjana*), honey (*kṣaudra*), ghee, scrambleberry (*tālīśa*), together with gold and ochre, with the juice of cow-dung (*gośakṛt*) are for

452 These therapies are described in SS.6.18 (**vulgate**).

453 Dalhaṇa interpreted this as blood-letting (*sirāvedha*), which is discussed in SS.1.14 (**vulgate**).

454 Wood apple (कपित्थ) in this verse is ablative singular or accusative plural, neither of which construe obviously.

455 A metal other than gold or silver, according to **josi-maha**. Perhaps lead, which is used in making contemporary collyrium.

- an eye afflicted with bile.
- 12cd–13 Alternatively, wise physician should first grind together elixir-salve (*śīta*) and stibnite (*sauvīraka*), infused (*bhāvita*) with the blood of birds and animals (*rasa*).⁴⁵⁶ Then he mixes it with the bile of a tortoise or with extract of rohu carp (*rauhita*). It should always be used with powdered collyrium to quell the bile.
- 14 Thus, a collyrium of white teak (*kārśmarī*) flowers, liquorice (*madhuka*), tree turmeric (*dārvī*), lodh tree (*lodhra*) and elixir salve (*rasāñjana*) is always good as a collyrium in this case.
- 15 Alternatively, for those who cannot see during the day, this pill (*guḍīkā*), with sandalwood, is recommended: salt (*nadīja*), conch shell and the three spices, collyrium, realgar (*manaḥśilā*), the two turmeric (*rajana*)⁴⁵⁷ and liver extract (*yakṛdrasa*).⁴⁵⁸
- 16 One should grind up kohl (*srotoja*),⁴⁵⁹ and Sind salt (*saindhava*) and long pepper and also hareṇu (*hareṇu*). Such wicks with goats urine are good in a collyrium for night blindness (*kṣaṇadāndhya*).
- 17–18ab Alternatively, in such a case, grind together Indian sarsaparilla (*kālānusāriva*)⁴⁶⁰ long pepper, dried ginger (*nāgara*) and honey, the leaf of the scramberry (*tālīśapatra*), the two turmeric (*rajana*), a conch shell and liver extract (*yakṛdrasa*). Then shade-dried wicks take away illness (*ruj*).
- 18cd–19ab Wicks made of red arsenic (*manaḥśilā*), chebulic myrobalan (*abhayā*), the three spices (*vyoṣa*). Indian sarsaparilla (*sāriva*), cuttlefish bone (*samudraphena*), combined with goat's milk are good.
- 19cd–21ab One should cook a honey collyrium (*kṣaudrāñjana*) either in the juices of cow's urine (*gomūtra*), and bile, spirits (*madirā*), liver (*yakṛt*), and emblic (*dhātṛī*) or else in the juice of the liver (*yakṛt*) of something different, or else with the extract of the three fruits (*triphalā*). One of these

456 This was Ḍalhaṇa's preferred interpretation of *rasa* "juice" in this context. He also noted that some take elixir-salve (*śīta*) to be camphor.

457 Turmeric (*Curcuma longa* Linn.) and tree turmeric (*Berberis aristata* DC). The term *rajana* is unusual; the normal term is *rajanī*. *Rajana* occurs in *Suśrutaniḥṣṇu* 158 in the sense of *Ferula asafoetida*, Linn.

458 This verse appears as no. 27 in the vulgate.

459 Glossed by Ḍalhaṇa as a kind of collyrium. Cf. **nadk-1954** and **shar-1982**

460 There are two forms of *sārivā* mentioned widely in Āyurvedic literature, the white and the black. Ideas on the identity of the black form are particularly fluid. See **adps** for a clear discussion.

- should be mixed with cow urine, ghee and cuttle fish (*arṇavamala*)⁴⁶¹ with long pepper, honey and box myrtle (*kaṭṭphala*). It is placed in sea salt and stored in a bamboo tube.
- 21cd–22 One should cook the liver of a sheep, the ghee of a goat, with long pepper and Sindh salt, honey and the juice of emblics. Then one should store it properly in a catechu box. Prepared thus, the honey collyrium is good.
- 23 Alternatively, a collyrium that is hareṇu (*hareṇu*) mixed with long pepper (*māgadhī*), the bone and the marrow of a goat, cardamom (*elā*) and liver, together with liver extract, is good for eyes afflicted by phlegm.⁴⁶²
- 24 Over a fire, one should cook the liver (*yakṛt*) of a monitor lizard (*godhā*) prepared with entrails (*antra*) and stuffed with long pepper (*māgadhī*). As is well known, liver (*yakṛt*) which is used (*niṣevita*) with collyrium certainly destroys night blindness.
- 25 After preparing both a spleen (*plīhan*) and a liver on a spit, one should eat them both with ghee and oil.⁴⁶³
- 25cd–26ab As is well known, there are six diseases that can be alleviated (*yāpya*); in those cases (*tatra*) one should release the blood by bloodletting. And for the sake of wellbeing one should also purge using aged ghee combined (*upahita*) with purgative aids (*aṅga*).
- 26cd–27 When an eye-disease is caused by wind (*pavanodbhava*) they say that castor oil (*pañcāṅgulataila*) mixed with milk is good.⁴⁶⁴ In the case of diseases of blood (*śonita*) and bile (*pitta*), one should drink ghee with the three fruits; it is particularly cleansing.⁴⁶⁵ In the case of phlegm,

461 At SS 6.12.31, Ḍalhaṇa glossed *arṇavamala* as cuttlefish bone (*samudraphena*). It may be worth considering whether the unusual term *arṇavamala* “ocean-filth” might refer to ambergris.

462 On the identities of *elā* and *hareṇu*, **watt-comm** described the former as “true” or “lesser” or “Malabar” cardamom, *Elettaria cardamomum*, Maton & White. In contrast, the “greater” cardamom is *Amomum subulatum* (that Watt discussed on p. 65) that is commonly used as an inferior substitute for *E. cardamomum*. **gvdb** provided an interesting discussion of *hareṇu*, noting that the term refers to two substances, first the *satīna* pulse (*Pisum sativum*, Linn.), and second an unknown fruit such as perhaps a *Vitex*. They noted, “None of the text commentators have attempted to disclose the nature of its source plant,” although Ḍalhaṇa described it as aromatic and identical to *reṇukā* (SS.ci.2.75).

463 We read the locative as if an instrumental; if the locative were intended then it would be the spit that would be coated with oil and ghee.

464 Ḍalhaṇa said that the unexpressed topic of this recipe is partial blindness (*timira*).

465 Blood-bile (*śonita-pitta*, *rakta-pitta*) is a widely-recognized disease in ayurveda, but

a purgative by means of turpeth (*trivṛt*) is recommended. In the case of all three humours, sandal (*sugandhi*) in oil is prepared with it (turpeth).⁴⁶⁶

28 In cases of partial blindness (*timira*), aged ghee is recommended. It is good if it is kept in an iron vessel.

28cd–29ab One should know that ghee with the three mylobalans is always good, and it is made with what is called periploca of the woods (*meṣaviṣāṇa*). A man who is suffering from partial blindness should lick the finely-ground three fruits mixed with ghee off his hand (*sapāṇa*).⁴⁶⁷

29cd Alternatively, someone afflicted by phlegm should apply them (the three fruits) mixed with oil and steeped (*pragāḍha*) in honey.

30 The very best oil, well-cooked with a decoction of cow-dung, is good in cases of partial blindness, taken as an errhine.
In cases caused by bile, ghee by itself is good, as is oil when it arises from wind and blood.

31 And in the case of wind one should apply turpeth (*trivṛt*) based on strong mallow (*atibalā*), and country mallow (*balā*) in an errhine (*nasya*).⁴⁶⁸

Ghee which has been extracted from milk cooked with the meat of aquatic creatures and those from marshlands should be prescribed.

32 †An enclosed roasting (*puṭākhyā*) with Sindh salt and the product of the meat of a carnivore (*kravyabhuj*) and a deer (*eṇa*), is combined with honey and ghee.⁴⁶⁹

the compound here is definitely dual, which rules out that interpretation. One would expect blood-bile because the previous verse

466 The expression “the fragrant one in oil (*tailasugandhi*)” is puzzling. The word *sugandhi* has different referents in the *Nighaṇṭu* literature but is not common as a noun in the extant literature. “Sandal” is just one of its possible meanings.

467 “Off his hand” translates the adverbial *sapāṇam*, an unusual word. Ḍalhaṇa reproduced a reading close to the Nepalese recension but says that Jejjāta rejects it and so he also does (**vulgate**).

468 “Based on” translates *-āśrita* “depending on” which does not construe easily here. The vulgate has *śṛta* “cooked” which makes easier sense but is not supported by the Nepalese MSS.

469 Ḍalhaṇa noted (**vulgate**) that *puṭāhvaya* (see verse 35 below) is a synonym for *puṭapāka*, and that the process is described in the *Kriyākālpa* chapter, i.e., SS.6.18.33–38 (**vulgate**). On the *puṭa* process in the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*, which is earlier and different than that of *rasaśāstra* literature, see the discussion by **wujad-2019**:

The term ‘enclosed roasting’ (*puṭapāka*) does occur in the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* in the

- Fat (*vasā*) from a horse, a vulture, a snake, and a cock (*tāmracūḍa*), combined with mahua (*madhūka*) is always good in a collyrium.^{†470}
- 33 Having prepared (*niṣevita*) a collyrium made of kohl (*srotas*) and gradually combine it with juices (*rasa*), milk and ghee.⁴⁷¹
For thirty days, this collyrium is put in the mouth of a black snake that is covered with kuśa grass (*kuśa*).
- 34 Next, a collyrium that is milk containing long pepper (*māgadhī*), lye (*kṣāraka*) and Sindh salt (*saindhava*) that has been repeatedly prepared with the mouth of a black snake, is good in the case of bloodshot blindness (*rāgin timira*).⁴⁷²
- 35 They say that ghee may be produced from that and combined with sweet herbs is good as an errhine for eye-diseases caused by bile.
And here, an eyewash (*tarpaṇa*) is good that is a combination that is the flesh of wild animals taken hot (*puṭāhvaya*).⁴⁷³
- 36 And realgar (*manaḥśilā*) mixed with elixir salve (*rasāñjana*) and honey is a liquid collyrium (*dravāñjana*) which is, in this case, combined with mahua (*madhūka*).⁴⁷⁴
Alternatively, experts on this say that finely ground blue vitriol (*tuttha*) extracted from a gold mine is the “same collyrium (*samāñjana*)”.⁴⁷⁵

context of eye treatments, but designates a method of obtaining juice from substances by wrapping them in leaves pasted with earth and cooking the bolus on charcoal to finally extract a juice.

470 This verse contain irresolvable difficulties. There are no significant variants in the Nepalese MS transmission, but the text is ungrammatical. The vulgate reads substantially differently but we have nevertheless made some emendations in line with it and read the verse as two sentences.

471 Ḍalhaṇa specified that the juices are meat soups of various animals (**vulgate**).

472 Ḍalhaṇa described this blindness as a type of *kāca* disease caused by wind (**vulgate**). The expression “bloodshot blindness” is an attempt to capture the idea of a blind eye that is dyed or coloured (not colour-blindness). This verse is quite different from the vulgate and also syntactically challenging.

473 The expression taken hot (*puṭāhvaya*) is a guess.

474 The expression liquid collyrium (*dravāñjana*) is only known from Ḍalhaṇa’s comments on 6.17.11ab (**vulgate**). The recipe in the present collyrium is different from that discussed by Ḍalhaṇa.

475 On *tuttha*, which may also be identified with zinc oxide or as crushed sea-urchin shells, see **falk-1991**; zinc oxide is a component of skin-balms but is not recommended for application in the eyes themselves. The expression “same collyrium (*samāñjana*)” is a hapax legomenon glossed inexplicably by Ḍalhaṇa as “a collyrium with an equal amount of fermented barley” (*tulyasauvīrāñjana*) (**vulgate**).

- 37 Conch mixed with equal parts of sheep's horn and stibnite (*añjana*) removes the impurity of the glassy opacity (*kāca*) because of the application of collyrium (*añjana*).⁴⁷⁶
The extracts (*rasa*) produced from aflame of the forest (*palāśa*), Rohīta tree (*rohīta*),⁴⁷⁷ mahua (*madhūka*), ground with the supernatant layer (*agra*) of the spirits (*madira*) is applied.
- 38 Alternatively, one should cook an errhine with cuscus grass (*uśīra*), lodh tree (*lodhra*), the three fruits (*triphalā*), beauty berry (*priyaṅgu*) to pacify eye diseases caused by phlegm.⁴⁷⁸
One should apply smoke of the bark of embelia (*vidaṅga*), velvet leaf (*pāthā*), white siris (*kinihī*), and desert date (*iṅgudī*); and cuscus grass (*uśīra*) alone.
- 39 A ghee that is cooked (*bhāvita*) from a decoction of a non-flowering tree (*vanaspati*)⁴⁷⁹ as well as turmeric (*haridrā*) and spikenard (*nalada*) is good in a eyewash (*tarpaṇa*).
Alternatively, one may have an enclosed roasting (*puṭapāka*) done with arid-land animals (*jāṅgala*)⁴⁸⁰ and a plentiful amount of long pepper (*māgadha*), Sindh salt and honey.
- 40 A treatment (*kriyā*) with realgar (*manahśilā*), the three spices, conch, honey, along with Sindh salt, green vitriol (*kāsīsa*) and elixir salve (*rasañjana*).⁴⁸¹
They say that an elixir salve (*rasañjana*) combined with myrobalans, treacle and dried ginger is good.⁴⁸²
- 41 Alternatively, a collyrium that has been prepared many times in the eight types of urine⁴⁸³ is put into water with the three fruits. Having stored it in the mouth of a nocturnal creature (*niśācara*)⁴⁸⁴ one should

find ref.

476 The ablative “from collyrium” is hard to construe, but Ḍalhaṇa used this term and phrase in his commentary on 6.17.41ab (**vulgate**).

477 Probably *Soymida febrifuga* A. Juss.

478 Ḍalhaṇa invoked a general rule (*paribhāṣā*) to indicate that this mixture should be cooked with sesame oil.

479 These are fig trees. The *Sauśrutasaṃhitā* (252) specifies the Uḍumbara. Cf. the classification in CS.1.1.71–72, 1.8, *et passim*.

480 On this term, see SS.1.35.42 (**vulgate**) and the discussion by zimm-1999.

481 Ḍalhaṇa glossed treatment (*kriyā*) specifically as inspissation (*rasakriyā*) (**vulgate**).

482 We emend हिते to हितम्, against the MSS.

483 See *Suśrutasaṃhitā* mūtravarga

484 Ḍalhaṇa glossed nocturnal creature (*niśācara*) as “vulture,” although elsewhere in the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* it is more commonly interpreted as a spirit or demon. In the present

place it in a conch (*salilotthita*) for two months.⁴⁸⁵

- 42 One should apply that collyrium together with the flowers of mahua (*madhūka*) and horseradish tree (*śigru*) when [the disease] is caused by all [the humours].

But alternatively, all treatments apply when blood is the cause. The procedure that removes bile is good when there is blue dot cataract (*mlāyin*).⁴⁸⁶

Check out these refs.

- 43 For one who has a humour, the physician should consider the rule in all humoral cases and then smear the ointment on the face.⁴⁸⁷

The treatment that is good for removing watery eye (*syanda*) should be properly applied in all these humoral cases, according to the individual.⁴⁸⁸

- 44 The physician should not employ substances in errhines etc., when the humours intensify, and also when disease spreads. And further, in the *Kalpa*, there is a good deal more said about collyriums, and that should be considered and then applied.⁴⁸⁹

meaning of kalpa

- 45 Someone who uses matured ghee, the three fruits, wild asparagus, as well as mung beans, emblic and barley has nothing to fear from cases of severe blindness (*timira*).

- 46 Blindness is dispelled by milk prepared with wild asparagus or in emblics, or again cooked barley (*yavaudana*) followed by the water of three fruits with plenty of ghee.

- 47 When there is bloodshot blindness (*rāgiṇi timire*), the wise physician should not cut a vein. A humour injured (*utpīḍita*) by the instrument rapidly destroys vision.

- 48 Non-bloodshot blindness (*araga timira*) in the first layer (*paṭala*) is treatable. And bloodshot blindness (*rāgiṇi timire*) in the second layer, with difficulty. And in the third layer it can be mitigated (*yāpya*).⁴⁹⁰

context, following verses 33 and 34, it is probably a snake.

485 We interpret “water-born (*salilotthita*)” as “conch” in line with *jalodbhava*, but the term is uncertain.

486 The vulgate follows Ḍaḥaṇa in glossing *mlāyin* as *parimlāya*. The description of this condition at SS.6.7.27–28 appears to refer to “blue dot” or “cerulean” cataract. √*mlai* derivatives can mean “dark” or “black.”), which is normally a different ailment.

487 The vulgate edition omits part of this verse (ab) combining earlier and later passages.

488 The term watery eye (*syanda*) refers to the specific disease *abhiṣyanda*. See SS.6.6.5, 1.46.51, etc.

489 Ḍaḥaṇa noted that *Kalpa* means the Uttaratantra adhyāya 18 (**vulgate**).

490 Although the text says with difficulty (*kṛcchra*), the implication is that it is untreatable

- 49 I shall explain the therapy for success when there is a cataract (*liṅganāśa*) caused by phlegm. It may be white, like a full moon, an umbrella, a pearl (*muktā*) or a spiral (*āvarta*).
- 50 Or it may be uneven, thin in the middle, streaked or have excessive shine (*prabha*). A humour (*doṣa*) in the pupil may be characterized as being painful or having blood.⁴⁹¹
- 51–52 At a time that is neither too hot or too cold, the patient who has been oiled and sweated is restrained and seated, looking symmetrically at his own nose.
The wise physician should separate (*muktvā*) two white sections from the black part (*kṛṣṇa*) and from the outer corner of the eye (*apāṅga*). Then he should press (*pīḍ-*) properly into the eye,⁴⁹² at the naturally-occurring (*daivakṛte*) opening (*chidra*) with a probe (*śalākā*) made of copper or iron, with a tip like a barley-corn, held by a steady hand with the middle finger, forefinger and thumb, the left one with the right hand and the other one contrariwise.
When the piercing is done properly, there is the issue of a drop of liquid and a sound.⁴⁹³
- 55 The expert should moisten the exact place of piercing with a woman's breast-milk. Then he should scratch the circuit of the pupil (*drṣṭimaṇḍala*) with the tip of the probe (*śalākā*).⁴⁹⁴
- 56 Without injuring, gently pushing the phlegm in the circuit of the pupil against the nose, he should remove it by means of sniffing (*ucchiṅgana*).⁴⁹⁵
- 57 Whether the humour is solid (*styāna*) or liquid (*cala*), one should apply

(*asādhya*) (cf. 6.17.2 (**vulgate**) above). The three categories, treatable, untreatable and possibly mitigated are standard categories of triage.

491 In the vulgate, and in parallel passages in the AS, the reading "it may be (*bhavet*)" is replaced with the negative "if, then not (*na ced*)" (cf. utt.17.1–3a (**atha-1980**)). These characteristics are then read as conditions that preclude surgery; for the Nepalese recension, they are simply descriptions of the appearance of a cataract.

492 We understand the locative *nayane* as the place of pressing; other interpreters take it as an accusative dual. The idea is that the eye is held steady by the surgeon.

493 Ḍalhaṇa remarked on 6.17.61ab (**vulgate**) that when the piercing is not correctly done, blood issues and there is no sound.

494 The anatomy of the eye is described in 6.1.14–16 (**vulgate**). The disks or *maṇḍalas* are the circuits or disks of the eye.

495 Ḍalhaṇa described sniffing (*ucchiṅgana*) at 6.19.8 (**vulgate**), clearly intending inward sniffing.

- sweating to the eye externally, with leaves (*bhaṅga*) that remove wind, after fixing the needle (*sūcī*) properly.⁴⁹⁶
- 58 But if the humour cannot be destroyed or if it comes back, one should apply the piercing (*vyadha*) once again, with appropriate oils and so on.
- 59 Now the pupil (*dṛṣṭi*) shines like the sun (*hari*) in a cloudless sky; then, when objects become visible, one may slowly remove the probe (*śalākā*).⁴⁹⁷
- 60 Having smeared ghee on the eye, one should cover it with a bandage. Then, he must lie down supine in a house free from disturbances.⁴⁹⁸
- 61 At that time, he should not belch, cough, sneeze, spit or shiver. Afterwards there should be restrictions (*yantraṇā*) as in the case of someone who has drunk oil.⁴⁹⁹
- 62 Every three days one should wash it with decoctions (*kaṣāya*) that remove wind. After three days, one should sweat the eye externally because of the danger of wind.
- 63 Having restrained himself in this way for ten days he should thereafter take a beneficial regimen (*karma*) that clears the pupil (*dṛṣṭi*) and also he should take light food in measure.

[Complications]

- 64 When there is a misshapen eyeball (*vilocana*), the eye may fill because of the release of blood from a vein.⁵⁰⁰

496 We interpret *bhaṅga* as leaves, following the usage elsewhere in this sthāna 4.32.9, 6.11.5 (**vulgate**) where *bhaṅga* means shoots (*pallava*). A similar procedure is described at 6.17.25a (**atha-1980**), where sweating of the eye is done by means of the leaves of a castor-oil plant.

497 There are many problems with the MS readings and interpretation of this half-verse. We have inferred “sky” and emended from “free from the point (*agramukta*)” to “free from clouds (*abhramukta*)”. The latter meaning is supported (in different words) by the vulgate and occurs elsewhere in Sanskrit literature.

498 Ḍalhaṇa explained disturbances specifically as dust, smoke, drafts and sunlight 6.17.67 (**vulgate**).

499 Ḍalhaṇa glossed “restrictions (*yantraṇā*)” as having a controlled diet and the other restrictions appropriate to someone who is taking oil as a preparation before further therapy (6.17.68 (**vulgate**)). These restrictions are also described at 6.18.28 (**vulgate**) and 1.16.25cd (**kunt-1939**).

500 The condition of “misshapen eye” is referred to briefly in 6.61.9 (**vulgate**), where Ḍalhaṇa glossed it as “bent brow and eye (*vakrabhrūnetra*).” The vulgate’s reading of “with blood (*śonitena*)” is easier to construe.

- A hard probe leads to shooting pain (*śūla*), a thin to unsteadiness of the humours (*doṣapariplava*),⁵⁰¹
- 65 a thick-tipped probe leads to a large wound, and a sharp one may cause harm in many ways; a very irregular one may cause a discharge of water, a rigid (*sthira*) one brings about a loss of function (*kriyāsaṅga*).⁵⁰²
- 66 Therefore, one should make a good probe that is free from these defects.

[Characteristics of the probe]

- The probe should be eight finger-breadths long and in the middle it is wrapped with thread and is as thick as a thumb joint. It is shaped like a bud at both ends (*vaktra*).
- 67 A commendable probe should be made of silver, iron or gold (*śātakumbhī*).⁵⁰³

[Complications]

- Redness, swelling, lumps, driness (*coṣa*), bubbling (*budbuda*),⁵⁰⁴ pigs' eye (*sūkarākṣitā*),⁵⁰⁵ irritation (*adhimantha*), etc. and other diseases arise from faults in the piercing,
- 69–70 or even from bad behaviour. One should treat them each accordingly. Listen to me once again about compounds for painful red eyes. Red chalk (*gairikaḥ*), Indian sarsaparilla (*śārivā*), panic grass (*dūrṇā*), and ghee ground with barley.
- 71 This face ointment is to be used for quelling pain and redness. Or else it may be taken combined with the juice of citron (*mātuluṅga*) with sesame gently fried, mixed with white mustard (*siddhārthaka*).⁵⁰⁶ This is immediately beneficial when someone is looking for relief.

501 There is a medically significant difference here from the vulgate, which reads “a rough (*khara*) probe” not a “thin” probe.

502 This translation of loss of function (*kriyāsaṅga*) is given on the basis of Ḍalhaṇa's gloss of *kriyāsaṅgakarī* at 3.8.19 (**vulgate**) as “causing the destruction of actions such as moving (*gamanādikriyāvināśakarī*).”

503 The vulgate reads “copper (*tāmra*)” in place of “silver.”

504 Ḍalhaṇa glossed “bubbling (*budbuda*)” as “prolapse (*māṃsanirgama*) that looks like bubbles.”

505 The expression “pigs' eye” appears to be a *hapax*. It was glossed as “downward vision (*adhodṛṣṭitva*)” by Ḍalhaṇa.

506 On the adverbial use of gently (*mṛdu*), see **gomb-1979**.

- 72 A paste with *Holostemma* (*payasyā*),⁵⁰⁷ Indian sarsaparilla (*śārivā*), cassia cinnamon (*patra*), Indian madder (*mañjiṣṭhā*), and liquorice (*madhukair*) stirred with goat's milk, pleasantly warmed, is said to be healthy.⁵⁰⁸
- 73 Alternatively, it can be made in this way with Himalayan cedar, Himalayan cherry (*padmaka*) and dried ginger. Or, in the same way, with grapes, liquorice and the Lodh tree mixed with Sindh salt.
- 74 Alternatively, goats' milk with the Lodh tree, Sindh salt, red grapes and liquorice, cooked, should be used in irrigation because it removes pain and redness.
- 75 Having cooked it with liquorice, water-lily, and costus, mixed with grapes (*drākṣā*), lac (*lākṣā*), white sugar (*sitā*), with wild asparagus, Hare Foot Uraria (*prthakparṇī*),⁵⁰⁹ nutgrass (*mustā*), liquorice, Himalayan cherry (*padmaka*), and Sindh salts, one should apply it [irrigation] gently warm.
- 76cd–77ab Ghee that has been cooked in four times the amount of milk that has itself been cooked with drugs that destroy wind.⁵¹⁰ This has an admixture of cottony jujube (*kākolī*) etc., should be prescribed in all treatments.⁵¹¹
- 77cd–78ab If pain does not end in this way, one should administer blood-letting to the vein of someone who has previously been oiled and sweated. Then the wise physician should apply cauterization in the advised manner.⁵¹²
- 78cd–80ab Now listen to two excellent collyriums for making the pupils clear. After grinding the flowers of perploca of the woods (*meṣaśṛṅga*),

507 The identity of *payasyā* is debated (**gvdb**), and was already in doubt at the time of Ḍalhaṇa but likely candidates may be those suggested by Ḍalhaṇa, who suggests either *arkapuṣpī* or *kṣīrakākolī*, that may be *Holostemma adakodien* Schult. and *Leptadenia reticulata* (Retz.) Wight & Arn. (**adps**). The *Sauśrutaniḡhaṇṭu* glosses it as *kṣīrikā* or *arkapuṣpikā* (**suve-2000**).

508 The expression “stirred with goat's milk (*ajākṣīrārdita*)” is difficult. It may be connected with the rare root *ard* documented by **whit-root**. Cf. *√ard gatau* (*Dhātupāṭha* 1.56).

509 **suve-2000**.

510 Ḍalhaṇa mentioned that these drugs include Deodar (*bhadradāru*) and other wind-destroying drugs. The *vātasamśamana* group is listed in *Suśrutasaṃhitā sūtrasthāna* 1.39.7.

511 Ḍalhaṇa noted that this would include errhines, ointments, etc.

512 The vulgate reads *vāpi* for *cāpi*, so Ḍalhaṇa saw blood-letting and cautery as alternatives, not a sequence of treatments. Ḍalhaṇa listed the places that cauterization may be applied, such as the brow, forehead, etc.

siris (*śirīṣa*), axelwood (*dhava*) royal jasmine (*jātī*), pearl and beryl (*vaiḍūrya*) with goat's milk, one should put it in a copper pot for seven days.

- 80cd–81 Having made it into wicks (*vartti*), the physician should apply it as a collyrium. Alternatively, one should make kohl (*srotoja*), coral (*vidruma*), cuttlefish bone (*phena*), and realgar (*maṇḥśilā*) and peppers into wicks as before. One should apply these wicks, which are good in a collyrium, to steady the pupil.
- 82 I shall again discuss the foremost collyriums at length in the *Kriyākalpa* section. Those various methods may be applied here too.

or a dual?

Uttaratantra 38: Diseases of the Female Reproductive System

Introduction

The chapter talks about various diseases of the female reproductive system and, in doing so, combines both aspects that go into a representation of diseases in āyurvedic literature: signs, symptoms and pathogenesis (*nidāna*), on the one hand, and medical treatment (*cikitsā*), on the other. In chapters of the *Uttaratantra*, these two aspects are sometime dealt with in two different chapters *X-vijñānīya* and *X-pratiṣedha*. There are, however, many examples where this distinction is not made.

Literature

The chapter is summarized, with notes on vocabulary and references to further research literature, in [HIML](#): IA, 313. ([tiva-1990](#)) dedicated a monograph to this topic, and [selb-2005](#); [selb-2005b](#) has explored gynecological narratives in ayurveda.

Placement of the Chapter

In the vulgate text (**vulgate**) the current chapter, 6.38, is found after the *Uttaratantra*'s subsection on paediatrics, the *Kumāratantra*, see Table 3.⁵¹³ But in the Nepalese version, this is chapter 6.58 of the *Uttaratantra*. And it is also counted as chapter 23 of the subsection *Kāyācikitsā*.

⁵¹³ Or *Kumārabhṛtya* as this section is named in MS Kathmandu KL 699.

Table 3: Subdivisions of the Uttaratantra, in the vulgate.

Section	Chapters	Internal count
Śālakya tantra	1–26	1–26
Kumāratantra	27–38	1–12
Kāyacikitsā tantra	39–59	1–21
Bhūtavidyā tantra	60–62	1–3
Tantrabhūṣaṇādhyāya	63–66	1–4

Several things are noteworthy in this regard:

- In the placement of the vulgate, this chapter follows upon 6.37 *Grahotpatti* (6.35 in the Nepalese version), a chapter that talks about the origination of nine demons (*graha*) that are responsible for all children's diseases described in previous chapters of the *Kumāratantra*. In this way, the current chapter retains the general focus on the child bearing (*kaumārabhṛtya*), but, at the same time, marks a change to a distinct, less mystical approach to the topic at hand (that could originate in a cultural milieu different from that of the preceding eleven chapters). Ḍalhaṇa explained how the chapter fits its context in the following way:

It is appropriate that, for the sake of treating the disorders of the female reproductive system, the chapter called “Countermeasures Against Disorders of the Female Reproductive System” is taught immediately after the chapter called “The Origination of Demons (*graha*).” It is because (1) there is an explicit mention of the word “*yonī*” in the statement “born in the womb (*yonī*) of animal and human” [in 6.37.13bc (**vulgate**)] and because (2) the disorders of the female reproductive system are the causes for the inborn disorders of children.⁵¹⁴

- In the placement of the Nepalese version,
 - 6.*Yonivyāpatpratiṣedha* is preceded by

⁵¹⁴ Ḍalhaṇa on 6.38.1 (**vulgate**): ग्रहोत्पत्त्यध्यायानन्तरं ‘तिर्यग्योनिं मानुषं च’ इति वचनेन योनेर्नाम-संकीर्तनात् कुमारजन्मविकारकारणत्वाच्च योनेर्व्यापञ्चिकित्सितार्थं योनिव्यापत्प्रतिषेधाध्यायारम्भो युज्यत [...].

- 6.56 *Mūtrāghātapraṭiṣedha* (6.58 in **vulgate**) and
- 6.57 *Mūtrakṛcchrapraṭiṣedha* (6.59 in **vulgate**), two chapters dealing with the diseases of the urinary tract.

The current chapter carries on with the topic of diseases that affect genitalia. In its Nepalese version, the chapter opens with two verses that explain the reasons for treating the particular set of diseases. These lack any reference to the inborn disorders of children, mentioned by Ḍalhaṇa, and instead highlight the importance of curing female diseases for the satisfaction of male partner.

- SS.1.3 in both **vulgate** and the Nepalese version lists the chapter at the place where it is found in the vulgate.⁵¹⁵
- Parallel chapters in the *Aṣṭāṅgasamgraha* and the *Aṣṭāṅgaḥṛdayasamhitā* form a part of the *Śalyatantra* section of each text.

Parallels

The current chapter is parallel in its content to *Aṣṭāṅgasamgraha* 6.38 and 6.39 as well as *Aṣṭāṅgaḥṛdayasamhitā* 6.33 and 6.34 (*Guhyarogavijñāna* and *Guhyarogapraṭiṣedha* respectively).

A close literary parallel to the first part of the chapter is found in *Mādhavanidāna* (**madhava**) 62, or at least its version printed in **madhava**. The readings of the **madhava** as it stands now usually side with the vulgate version rather than with the Nepalese. In addition to the basic text, there are several valuable pointers made in the *Madhukośa*, an early commentary on the **madhava**. This part of the text is authored by Śrīkaṇṭhadatta, who was most like a direct student of Vijarakṣita. The latter wrote the first part of the *Madhukośa*, up to chapter 32, and, what is more, can be dated to the late eleventh or early twelfth centuries.⁵¹⁶

Another most interesting parallel is found in *Carakasamhitā* 6(Ci).30.

⁵¹⁵ See 1.3.37ab (**vulgate**): नैगमेषचिकित्सा च ग्रहोत्पत्तिः सयोनिजा ॥.

⁵¹⁶ meul-1974.

Philological notes

Metrical alterations

The first two verses in the Nepalese version, 6.38.2.1 and 6.38.4.1, are written in a classical variety of the *upajāti* metre: $\underline{\text{U}} \text{ } \underline{\text{U}} \text{ } \underline{\text{U}} \text{ } \underline{\text{U}} \text{ } \underline{\text{U}} \text{ } \underline{\text{U}} \text{ } \underline{\text{U}} \text{ } \underline{\text{U}}$. In content, they are only approximately parallel to three hemistichs in *anuṣṭubh* metre found in the vulgate.⁵¹⁷ The latter verses lack the apologetic explanation concerning the reasons for this chapter being taught.

The original opening verses

From verse *Suśrutasamhitā* 6.38.5.1 onwards, the Nepalese version of the text continues with three hemistichs in the same classical *upajāti* metre (the syllabic pattern above).⁵¹⁸ By contrast, the vulgate contains two complete verses (four hemistichs) in the *anuṣṭubh* metre, again with only loosely-related content.⁵¹⁹ The three final hemistichs of this group are borrowed verbatim from the *Carakasamhitā*.⁵²⁰ We can be sure of the direction of borrowing because one of these shared verses says that the twenty kinds of diseases of the female reproductive system “have already been indicated in the *Compendium of Diseases* (rogasaṃgraha)”.⁵²¹ This statement does not make any sense in the context of the *Suśrutasamhitā*, where no such Compendium exists.⁵²² By contrast, in the *Carakasamhitā* this reference points back to chapter 1.19 (**cara-trikamji3**), which calls itself “The Compendium of Diseases”.⁵²³ This Compendium lists all the diseases dealt with in later sections of the text, and specifically mentions the twenty diseases of female reproductive system.⁵²⁴ Even the vocabulary and wording of this passage

⁵¹⁷ *Suśrutasamhitā* 6.38.3–4ab (**vulgate**).

⁵¹⁸ The metre of these verses is not perfect.

⁵¹⁹ *Suśrutasamhitā* 6.38.4cd–6ab (**vulgate**).

⁵²⁰ *Carakasamhitā* 6.30.7cd–8 (**cara-trikamji3**).

⁵²¹ *Suśrutasamhitā* 6.38.5ab (**vulgate**): विंशतिर्व्यापदो योनेर्निर्दिष्टा रोगसंग्रहे ॥ ← *Carakasamhitā* 6.30.7cd (**cara-trikamji3**).

⁵²² The remark was not commented on by Dalhaṇa.

⁵²³ *Carakasamhitā* 1.19.9cd (**cara-trikamji3**): रोगाध्याये प्रकाशिताः.

⁵²⁴ *Carakasamhitā* 1.19.3 (**cara-trikamji3**): विंशतिर्योन्यापदः ।

is identical to the later verses. It is beyond doubt that this passage originated in the *Carakasamhitā* and was borrowed by the editors of the vulgate text of the *Suśrutasamhitā*.⁵²⁵

⁵²⁵ The above three hemistichs in *anuṣṭubh* are also repeated in the **madhava** 62.1–2ab. Given that the subsequent verses in the **madhava** stem from the *Suśrutasamhitā*, it is likely that **madhava** 62.1–2ab too was borrowed from from the *Suśrutasamhitā* and not from its original location in the *Carakasamhitā*).

Translation

- 1 And now I shall explain the countermeasures against disorders of the female reproductive system (*yonivyāpat*).⁵²⁶
- *3 Since for good men, a woman is the most pleasurable thing, therefore a physician should diligently attend to the diseases located in the female reproductive system (*yonī*), because he is entirely devoted to it (that is, to curing these diseases) for the sake of (people's) happiness.⁵²⁷
- *4 A corrupted female reproductive system (*yonī*) cannot consume semen (*bīja*), and therefore, the woman cannot take a fetus (that is, become pregnant). She gets severe prolapses (*arśas*), abdominal lump (*gulma*) and similarly many other diseases (*roga*).
- *5 Humours (*doṣa*), wind (*vāta*), etc., corrupted due to faulty medical treatment (*mithyopacāra*),⁵²⁸ sexual activity, fate, and also defects (*doṣa*) of menstrual blood (*ārtava*) and semen (*bīja*), produce various diseases in the female reproductive organ (*yonī*). These 20 diseases are taught here distinctly and one by one along with their treatment

526 On this broad understanding of the term *yonī* as “female reproductive system” see Das 2003: pp. 572–5.

527 As our translation indicates, the sentence construction does not allow an unambiguous identification of who or what is the referent of the pronoun *tad* in the compound form *tadadhīna* ‘devoted to it.’ Our current understanding is that *tad* refers to the ‘most pleasurable thing’ mentioned in pāda a. It could, however, also refer to ‘them,’ that is, the ‘good men.’

528 In our translation of the compound मिथ्योपचार, we decided for the technical meaning of the term उपचार, that is, “medical application” or “treatment.” The combination मिथ्या+उप-√चर् is attested several times in medical literature. At least once, at *Carakasamhitā* 3.3.38 (*cara-trikamjī*), it is given an explicit gloss by Cakrapāṇidatta: मिथ्योपचरितानिति असम्यक् चिकित्सितान् “... given improper therapy”. In the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* (*vulgate*), it is used once in a passage (6.18.30 (*vulgate*)) where it refers specifically to the wrong application of irrigation (*tarpaṇa*) and roasting (*putapāka*), both of which are mentioned in the previous verse. Another use of the compound in a similar meaning is found in a citation from Bhoja’s work quoted by Gayadāsa at *Suśrutasaṃhitā* 2.5.17 (*vulgate*): श्वित्रं तु द्विविधं प्रोक्तं दोषजं व्रणजं तथा । तत्र मिथ्योपचाराद्धि व्रणस्य व्रणजं स्मृतम् ॥ “... arises from wrong treatment of the wound.” In contrast to this, the parallel verse in *Suśrutasaṃhitā* 6.38.5ab (*vulgate*) = *Carakasamhitā* 6.30.8 (*cara-trikamjī*) = *madhava* 62.1 reads मिथ्याचार “wrong conduct.” All commentators (Cakrapāṇidatta on the *Carakasamhitā*, Śrīkaṇṭhadatta on the *madhava*, and Ḍalhaṇa on the *Suśrutasaṃhitā*) explain that the wrong conduct stands here specifically for unwholesome diet. The parallel in *Aṣṭāṅgahṛdayasaṃhitā* 6.33.27 (*kunt-1939*) = *Aṣṭāṅgasaṅgraha* 6.38.34a (*atha-1980*) plainly reads दुष्टभोजन “corrupted food” instead.

(*bheṣaja*), causes (*hetu*) and signs (*cihna*).

*6.1 Because of wind (*vāta*), female reproductive organ (*yonī*) becomes:

1. udāvartā (*udāvartā*),
2. called Infertile (*vandhyā*), and
3. Sprung (*plutā*),
4. Flooded (*pariplutā*), and
5. Windy (*vātalā*).

*6.2 And because of choler (*pitta*), occur:

1. With bloodloss (*raktakṣayā*),
2. Vomiting (*vāminī*), and
3. Causing a Fall (*sraṃsanī*),
4. Child-murderess (*putraghnī*), and also
5. Bilious / Choleric (*pittalā*).

*7.1 And because of phlegm (*kapha*) occur:

1. Extremely Excited (*atyānandā*),
2. Protuberant (*karṇinī*), and
3. & 4. two Caraṇī (*caraṇī*), and
5. other Phlegmatic (*śleṣmalā*).

*7.2 And similarly there are other (kinds of morbid female reproductive system) involving all *doṣas*:

1. Impotent (*śaṇḍhī*),
2. With testicles (*aṇḍīnī*),
3. two Huge (*mahatī*),
4. With a needle-like opening (*sūcīvaktṛā*),
5. Sarvātmikā (*sarvātmikā*).

Uttaratantra 65: Rules of Interpretation

Literature

Meulenbeld offered an annotated overview of this chapter and a bibliography of earlier scholarship to 2002.⁴⁵¹ Earlier explorations of this topic include **dasg-1952**; **lele-1981**; **mejo-2000**; **nara-1949**; **ober-1967**; **scha-1993**; **sing-2003**; **muth-1976**.

prei-2013 provided further references to the discussion of *yukti* in Buddhist literatures. **mane-2008** gave examples of the use of *tantrayuktis* in Buddhist commentarial literature. **chev-2009** discusses the translation of the *tantrayuktis* in Tamil literary tradition, with a specific focus on *Tolkāppiyam* and its commentaries.

Early Sources

An ancient tradition of enumerating the *tantrayuktis* served as a foundational source not only for medical texts but also for works in various other disciplines, including Arthaśāstra, philosophy, and even grammar. The *Suśruta Saṃhitā* stands as the earliest Āyurvedic text that presents a compilation of a list of *tantrayuktis* followed by their definitions and usage. Mentions to *Tantrayuktis* are also found in the *Caraka Saṃhitā* 8.12 (**cara-trikamji3**) which introduce four additional *tantrayuktis*. However, the *tantrayuktis* remain undefined in the *Caraka Saṃhitā*.

The enumeration and definitions of the *tantrayuktis* in the *Suśruta Saṃhitā* closely parallel their treatment in the *Arthaśāstra*. *Tantrayuktis*

⁴⁵¹ [HIML](#): IA, 331.

are discussed in the 15th (final) chapter of the *Arthaśāstra* called the *Tantrayukti*.⁴⁵² For a side-by-side comparison of the *tantrayuktis* in the *Suśruta Saṃhitā* and the *Arthaśāstra*, please refer to Table 4.

Yuktidīpikā (circa late sixth to early eighth century), an anonymous commentary on Īśvarakṛṣṇa's *Sāṅkhyakārikā*, initiates its discourse with a detailed discussion of the characteristics of a scientific treatise, some of which align with the *tantrayuktis*.⁴⁵³ In the *Yuktidīpikā*, these terms are referred to as *tantraguṇa* or *tantrasampat*. They are: (1) *sūtropapatti* (2) *pramāṇopapatti* (3) *avayavopapatti* (4) *anyūnatā* (5) *saṁśayokti* (6) *nirṇayokti* (7) *uddeśa* (8) *nirdeśa* (9) *anukrama* (10) *saṃjñā* and (11) *upadeśa*.⁴⁵⁴

Discussions on the *tantrayuktis* are also found in Tamil technical literature, the earliest of which is the *Tolkāppiyam*.⁴⁵⁵ A list of 32 *tantrayuktis*, called *utti* or *tantiravutti* in Tamil, are given in the 27th (the final) chapter titled *Marapiyal* "Chapter on conventions" of the last book called *Poruḷ* "Matters" of the *Tolkāppiyam*. There is no consensus regarding the dating of the *Tolkāppiyam*. However, if we endorse Zvelebil's view, which posits that the final redaction of the *Tolkāppiyam* occurred around the fifth century AD, it follows that this section of the *Tolkāppiyam* cannot postdate the fifth century. If we follow the dating of Zvelebil, we can safely argue that by that time, Sanskrit *tantrayuktis* had already been translated into Tamil. Nevertheless, determining the correspondence between specific *tantrayuktis* and Tamil *uttis* poses a challenge. A major factor contributing to this challenge is the disagreement between two commentators of the *Tolkāppiyam*, namely Ḹampūraṇar (11th or 12th century) and Pēraciriyar (possibly 13th century), regarding the interpretation of the list of *uttis*. It is still not clear which list of 32 *tantrayuktis* was before the author of the *Tolkāppiyam*.

After the *Tolkāppiyam*, several other Tamil texts refer to the *tantrayuktis*. Among them the *Yāpparuṅkalam* (possibly 10th century), the *Vīracolīyam* (11th century), *Naṇṇūl* (late 12th or early 13th century), and their commentaries hold significant importance in this context.

452 kang-1960

453 See ober-1967 for a detailed discussion of the use of the *tantrayuktis* in the *Yuktidīpikā*.

454 सूत्रप्रमाणावयवोपपत्तिरन्यूनता संशयनिर्णयोक्तिः ।

उद्देशनिर्देशमनुक्रमश्च संज्ञोपदेशाविह तन्त्रसम्पत् ॥

wezl-1998

455 For a detailed discussion of the treatment of the *tantrayuktis* in the *Tolkāppiyam* see chev-2009.

The third book of the *Viṣṇudharmottarapurāṇa*, believed to have been composed between the fifth and seventh centuries, includes a chapter dedicated to the *tantrayuktis*.⁴⁵⁶ Unlike the *Arthaśāstra* and the *Suśruta Saṃhitā* this chapter lacks illustrative examples of the *tantrayuktis*. The chapter lists 32 *tantrayuktis* followed by definitions. Notably, the list and definitions given here are (we are using the critical edition by Priyabala Shah) in most cases bear a striking resemblance to those found in the *Suśruta Saṃhitā*. Given the striking alignment between the list and definitions of *tantrayuktis*, one could suggest that the *Viṣṇudharmottarapurāṇa*'s chapter on *tantrayuktis* likely draws directly or indirectly from the *Suśruta Saṃhitā* or from a common source. The designations and the order of the *tantrayuktis* in the *Viṣṇudharmottarapurāṇa* are almost identical. The only differences in the order are as follows:

1. *Viparyaya* is placed after *vidhāna* whereas in the *Suśruta Saṃhitā* it follows *arthāpatti*.
2. *Anumata* is placed after *vyākhyāna* whereas in the *Suśruta Saṃhitā* follows *nirṇaya*.
3. *Anāgatāvekṣaṇa* (*anāgatāpekṣaṇa* in the Nepalese version) occurs after *atīkrāntāvekṣaṇa* (*atīkrāntāpekṣaṇa* in the Nepalese version) whereas the order is reverse in the *Suśruta Saṃhitā*.

For a side-by-side comparison of the *tantrayuktis* in the *Suśruta Saṃhitā* and the *Viṣṇudharmottarapurāṇa*, please refer to Table 4.

Table 4: *Tantrayuktis* in *Suśruta Saṃhitā* (S), *Viṣṇudharmottarapurāṇa* (V), and *Arthaśāstra* (A)

Sequence	Terms	Definitions
(S) 1.	<i>adhikaraṇa</i>	तत्र यमर्थमधिकृत्योच्यते तदधिकरणम् ।
(V) 1.	<i>adhikaraṇa</i>	तत्र यमर्थमधिकृत्योच्यते तदधिकरणम् ।
(A) 1.	<i>adhikaraṇa</i>	यमर्थमधिकृत्योच्यते तदधिकरण ।
(S) 2.	<i>yoga</i>	येन वाक्यं युज्यते स योगः ।
(V) 2.	<i>yoga</i>	येन वाक्यार्थो युज्यते स योगः ।
(A) 3.	<i>yoga</i>	वाक्ययोजना योगः ।

⁴⁵⁶ Adhyāya 6, *shah-1958*.

Sequence	Terms	Definitions
(S) 3.	<i>padārtha</i>	योऽर्थोऽभिहितः सूत्रे पदे वा स पदार्थः । पदस्य पदयोः पदानां वा योऽर्थः स पदार्थः । अपरिमिताश्च पदार्थाः ।
(V) 3.	<i>padārtha</i>	योऽर्थो विधिकृतः सूत्रपदे स पदार्थः ।
(A) 4.	<i>padārtha</i>	पदावधिकः पदार्थः ।
(S) 4.	<i>hetvārtha</i>	यदुक्तं साधनं भवति स हेत्वर्थः ।
(V) 4.	<i>hetvārtha</i>	यदन्यद्युक्तिमदर्थस्य साधनं स हेत्वर्थः ।
(A) 5.	<i>hetvārtha</i>	हेतुरर्थसाधको हेत्वर्थः ।
(S) 5.	<i>uddeśa / samuddeśa</i>	समासवचनं समुद्देशः ।
(V) 5.	<i>uddeśa</i>	समासवचनमुद्देशः ।
(A) 6.	<i>uddeśa</i>	समासवाक्यमुद्देशः ।
(S) 6.	<i>nirdeśa</i>	विस्तरवचनं निर्देशः ।
(V) 6.	<i>nirdeśa</i>	विस्तरवचनं निर्देशः ।
(A) 7.	<i>nirdeśa</i>	व्यासवाक्यं निर्देशः ।
(S) 7.	<i>upadeśa</i>	एवमित्युपदेशः ।
(V) 7.	<i>upadeśa</i>	एवमेवेत्युपदेशः ।
(A) 8.	<i>upadeśa</i>	एवं वर्तितव्यमित्युपदेशः ।
(S) 8.	<i>apadeśa</i>	अनेन कारणेनेत्युपदेशः ।
(V) 8.	<i>apadeśa</i>	अनेन कारणेनेत्युपदेशः ।
(A) 9.	<i>apadeśa</i>	एवमसावाहेत्युपदेशः ।
(S) 9.	<i>pradeśa</i>	प्रकृतस्यातिक्रान्तेन साधनं प्रदेशः ।
(V) 9.	<i>pradeśa</i>	प्रकृतस्यानागतेन साधनं प्रदेशः ।
(A) 11.	<i>predeśa</i>	वक्तव्येन साधनं प्रदेशः ।
(S) 10.	<i>atideśa</i>	प्रकृतस्यानागतेन साधनम् अतिदेशः ।
(V) 10.	<i>atideśa</i>	अतिक्रमणेन अतिदेशः ।
(A) 10.	<i>atideśa</i>	उक्तेन साधनमतिदेशः ।
(S) 11.	<i>apavarga</i>	अभिप्रमृज्यापकर्षणमपवर्गः ।
(V) 11.	<i>apavarga</i>	अभिप्रायानुकर्षणमपवर्गः ।
(A) 22.	<i>apavarga</i>	अभिप्लुतव्यपकर्षणमपवर्गः ।
(S) 12.	<i>vākyaśeṣa</i>	येन पदेनानुक्तेन वाक्यं समाप्यते स वाक्यशेषः ।

Sequence	Terms	Definitions
(V) 12.	<i>vākyaśeṣa</i>	येनार्थः परिसमाप्यते पदेनाहार्येण स वाक्य- शेषः ।
(A) 17.	<i>vākyaśeṣa</i>	येन वाक्यं समाप्यते स वाक्यशेषः ।
(S)		
(V)		
(A) 12.	<i>upamāna</i>	दृष्टेनादृष्टस्य साधनमुपमानम् ।
(S) 13.	<i>arthāpatti</i>	यदकीर्तितमर्थादापद्यते सार्थापत्तिः ।
(V) 13.	<i>arthāpatti</i>	यदकीर्तितमर्थादापद्यते सार्थापत्तिः ।
(A) 13.	<i>arthāpatti</i>	यदनुक्तमर्थादापद्यते सार्थापत्तिः ।
(S) 14.	<i>viparyaya</i>	यद्यस्य प्रातिलोम्यं तद्विपर्ययः ।
(V) 20.	<i>viparyaya</i>	तस्य प्रातिलोम्यं विपर्ययः ।
(A) 16.	<i>viparyaya</i>	प्रतिलोमेन साधनं विपर्ययः ।
(S) 15.	<i>prasaṅga</i>	प्रकरणान्तरेण समानः प्रसङ्गः ।
(V) 14.	<i>prasaṅga</i>	प्रकरणाभिहितोऽर्थः केनचिदुपोद्धातेन पुनरु- च्यमानः प्रसङ्गः ।
(A) 15.	<i>prasaṅga</i>	प्रकरणान्तरेण समानोऽर्थः प्रसङ्गः ।
(S) 16.	<i>ekānta</i>	यदवधारणेनोच्यते स एकान्तः ।
(V) 15.	<i>ekānta</i>	यथा तथा स एकान्तः ।
(A) 26.	<i>ekānta</i>	सर्वत्रायत्तमेकान्तः ।
(S) 17.	<i>anekānta</i>	क्वचित्तथा क्वचिदन्यथा सोऽनेकान्तः ।
(V) 16.	<i>anekānta</i>	क्वचित्तथा क्वचिदन्यथाऽसावनेकान्तः ।
(A)		
(S) 18.	<i>pūrvapakṣa</i>	यस्तु निःसंशयमभिधीयते स पूर्वपक्षः । ⁴⁵⁷
(V) 17.	<i>pūrvapakṣa</i>	प्रतिषेधवचनं पूर्वपक्षः ।
(A) 24.	<i>pūrvapakṣa</i>	प्रतिषेद्धव्यं वाक्यं पूर्वपक्षः ।
(S) 19.	<i>nirṇaya</i>	तस्योत्तरं निर्णयः ।
(V) 18.	<i>nirṇaya</i>	उत्तरवचनं निर्णयः ।
(A) 25.	<i>uttarapakṣa</i>	निर्णयवाक्यमुत्तरपक्षः ।
(S) 20.	<i>anumata</i>	परमतमप्रतिषिद्धमनुमतम् ।
(V) 25.	<i>anumata</i>	परमतमप्रतिषिद्धमनुमतम् ।
(A) 18.	<i>anumata</i>	परवाक्यमप्रतिषिद्धमनुमतम् ।

⁴⁵⁷ This definition of *pūrvapakṣa* in the Nepalese version is problematic.

Sequence	Terms	Definitions
(S) 21.	<i>vidhāna</i>	प्रकरणानुपूर्व्यादभिहितं विधानम् ।
(V) 19.	<i>vidhāna</i>	प्रकरणानुपूर्वं विधानम् ।
(A) 2.	<i>vidhāna</i>	शास्त्रस्य प्रकरणानुपूर्वी विधानम् ।
(S) 22.	<i>anāgatāpekṣaṇa</i>	एवं वक्ष्यतीत्यनागतापेक्षणम् ।
(V) 22.	<i>anāgatāpekṣaṇa</i>	परत्र वक्षामीत्यनागतावेक्षणम् ।
(A) 27.	<i>anāgatāvekṣaṇa</i>	पश्चादेवं विहितमित्यनागतावेक्षणम् ।
(S) 23.	<i>atīkrāntāpekṣaṇa</i>	इत्युक्तमित्यतिक्रान्तापेक्षणम् ।
(V) 21.	<i>atīkrāntāpekṣaṇa</i>	इत्युक्तमतिक्रान्तावेक्षणम् ।
(A) 28.	<i>atīkrāntāvekṣaṇa</i>	पुरस्तादेवं विहितमित्यतिक्रान्तावेक्षणम् ।
(S) 24.	<i>saṁśaya</i>	उभयहेतुनिर्दर्शनं संशयः ।
(V) 23.	<i>saṁśaya</i>	उभयतो हेतुदर्शनं संशयः ।
(A) 14.	<i>saṁśaya</i>	उभयतो हेतुमानर्थः संशयः ।
(S) 25.	<i>vyākhyāna</i>	तत्रातिशयोपवर्णनं व्याख्यानम् ।
(V) 24.	<i>vyākhyāna</i>	तत्रातिशयवर्णनातिव्याख्यानम् ।
(A) 19.	<i>vyākhyāna</i>	अतिशयवर्णना व्याख्यानम् ।
(S) 26.	<i>svasaṁjñā</i>	अन्यशास्त्रासामान्या स्वसंज्ञा ।
(V) 26.	<i>svasaṁjñā</i>	परैरसम्मतः शब्दः स्वसंज्ञा ।
(A) 23.	<i>svasaṁjñā</i>	परैरसमितः शब्दः स्वसंज्ञा ।
(S) 27.	<i>nirvacana</i>	लोकप्रथितमुदाहरणं निर्वचनम् ।
(V) 27.	<i>nirvacana</i>	लोके प्रतीतमुदाहरणं निर्वचनम् ।
(A) 20.	<i>nirvacana</i>	गुणतः शब्दनिष्पत्तिर्निर्वचनम् ।
(S) 28.	<i>nidarśana</i>	दृष्टान्तव्यक्तिर्निर्दर्शनम् ।
(V) 28.	<i>nidarśana</i>	तद्युक्तिनिर्दर्शनं दृष्टान्तः ।
(A) 21.	<i>nidarśana</i>	दृष्टान्तो दृष्टान्तयुक्तो निर्दर्शनम् ।
(S) 29.	<i>niyoga</i>	इदमेवेति नियोगः ।
(V) 29.	<i>niyoga</i>	एवेति नियोगः ।
(A) 29.	<i>niyoga</i>	एवं नान्यथेति नियोगः ।
(S) 30.	<i>vikalpa</i>	।
(V) 30.	<i>vikalpa</i>	इदं वेदं वेति विकल्पः ।
(A) 30.	<i>vikalpa</i>	अनेन वानेन वेति विकल्पः ।
(S) 31.	<i>samuccaya</i>	।
(V) 31.	<i>samuccaya</i>	इदं चेदं चेति समुच्चयः ।

Sequence	Terms	Definitions
(A) 31.	<i>samuccaya</i>	अनेन चानेन चेति समुच्चयः ।
(S) 32.	<i>ūhya</i>	यदनिर्दिष्टं बुद्धिगम्यं तदूह्यम् ।
(V) 32.	<i>ūhya</i>	अत्र यदनिर्दिष्टं युक्तिगम्यं तदूह्यम् ।
(A)	<i>ūhya</i>	अनुक्तकरणमूह्यम् ।

Terminology

The definitions of *tantrayuktis* exhibit numerous variations across different texts. Here we will discuss each of the *tantrayuktis* that occur in the *Suśruta Saṃhitā* in comparison with their definitions in other texts.

Characteristics of the Manuscript Transmission

Translation

- 1 Now we shall explain the chapter called, “the enunciation of the logical methods of the system (*tantrayukti*).”
- 3 There are thirty-two logical methods of the system. They are as follows:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. topic (<i>adhikaraṇa</i>) | 15. recontextualization |
| 2. construing (<i>yoga</i>) | (<i>prasaṅga</i>) |
| 3. word meaning (<i>padārtha</i>) | 16. invariable statement (<i>ekānta</i>) |
| 4. premise (<i>hetvārtha</i>) | 17. variable statement (<i>anekānta</i>) |
| 5. mention (<i>samuddēśa</i>) | 18. objection (<i>pūrvapakṣa</i>) |
| 6. description (<i>nirdeśa</i>) | 19. determination (<i>nirṇaya</i>) |
| 7. prescription (<i>upadeśa</i>) | 20. consent (<i>anumata</i>) |
| 8. statement of reason (<i>apadeśa</i>) | 21. itemization (<i>vidhāna</i>) |
| 9. indication (<i>pradeśa</i>) | 22. future reference |
| 10. prediction (<i>atideśa</i>) | (<i>anāgatāpekṣaṇa</i>) |
| 11. exception (<i>apavarga</i>) | 23. past reference |
| 12. ellipsis (<i>vākyaśeṣa</i>) | (<i>atīkrāntāpekṣaṇa</i>) |
| 13. implication (<i>arthāpatti</i>) | 24. doubt (<i>saṃśaya</i>) |
| 14. contraposition (<i>vīparyaya</i>) | 25. explication (<i>vyākhyāna</i>) |

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 26. field-specific term
(<i>svasaṃjñā</i>) | 29. compulsion (<i>niyoga</i>) |
| 27. interpretation (<i>nirvacana</i>) | 30. option (<i>vikalpa</i>) |
| 28. illustration (<i>nidarśana</i>) | 31. aggregation (<i>samuccaya</i>) |
| | 32. deducible (<i>ūhya</i>) |

- 4 It is said about this, “what is the purpose of these methods?” The answer is, “construing sentences and construing meanings”.⁴⁵⁸

- 5-6 There are **two** verses about this:

The logical methods of the system prohibit statements employed by people who do not speak the truth. They also bring about the validity of one’s own statements. And they also clarify meanings that are stated back to front, that are implicit, unclear and any that are partially stated.

- 8 Among them, “topic (*adhikaraṇa*)” refers to the object, with reference to which statements are made, such as flavour (*rasa*) or humour (*doṣa*).⁴⁵⁹
- 9 “Construing (*yoga*)” is that by which a sentence is construed, as when words that are in a reversed order, whether placed close or apart, have their meanings unified.

Sesame oil he should drink, with heart-leaved moonseed,
neem tree, **maidenhair fern**, Indrajaio, and long pepper

that is cooked with heart-leaf sida and country mallow, and
deodar, always for a benefit in the case of the disease goitre.

In this verse, one ought to say, first, “one should drink cooked...” However, the word “cooked” is used in the second line.⁴⁶⁰ Unifying the meanings of words in this way, even though they are far apart, is construing.

- 10 The meaning that is conveyed in an aphorism (*sūtra*) or a word is called word-meaning (*padārtha*). In other words, word-meaning is the meaning of one or more words. Word-meanings are unlimited.

458 Ḍaḥaṇa on 6.65.4 (**vulgate**) explained “construing a sentence” as “connecting up a sentence that is not connected,” and “construing a meaning” as “clarifying or making appropriate a meaning that is implied or inappropriate.”

459 The idea here is that “*rasa*” may be the topic of a chapter, and statements in that chapter are all understood to be about that topic

460 The Nepalese version reads द्वितीये पादे which would properly mean the second quarter of the first line; the vulgate reads “third quarter” which seems more correct.

- Where two or three meanings such as ‘fat,’ ‘sweat’ or ‘anointment’ appear to be possible, the valid meaning is the one that construes with prior and subsequent elements.⁴⁶¹ For example, when it is said that, “We are going to explain the chapter on the *veda*-origin” the mind may be confused about which “*veda*” will be spoken about. *Sāmaveda* and so on are the Vedas. Taking note of the prior and subsequent elements, the two roots *vind* “find” and *vid* “know” have a single meaning. Subsequently, the understanding takes place that there is a wish to talk about the origin of *āyurveda*. So that is the meaning of the word.⁴⁶²
- 11 The sense of the cause (*hetvārtha*) is a statement that is a premiss (*sādhana*). For example, just as a lump of earth is moistened by water, so a wound is moistened by substances like milk with green gram.⁴⁶³
 - 12 A mention (*samuddeśa*) is a brief statement such as “spike (*śalya*)”.⁴⁶⁴
 - 13 A description (*nirdeśa*) is a detailed statement. For example, “in the body or exogenous”.⁴⁶⁵
 - 14 “Prescription (*upadeśa*)” refers to statements like “it should be this

See also
Dāhāṇa
at 1.1.1
(vulgate)

- 461 There is a dangling relative clause, यो ऽर्थः, in the Nepalese version that is avoided in the vulgate recension by the addition of स ग्रहीतव्यः.
- 462 The Nepalese text here is hard to follow, and the vulgate has a significantly different reading. But the problem situation seems to be as follows. The *Suśrutasaṃhitā* opens with a statement saying that it will describe the “origin of the *veda*” (*vedot-patti*). The problem is, what does this word “*veda*” refer to? Is it the Veda, as in *Sāmaveda*? Or something derived from the roots √*vind* or √*vid*? Context (“prior and subsequent elements”) can help us to know that “*veda*” means only “*āyurveda*” and that the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* is talking about the origin of *ayurveda*, specifically. This same issue is also addressed by Dāhāṇa at 1.1.1 (vulgate).
- 463 The way this principle is expressed here seems to be describing the application of a general principle (water makes things wet) to a specific context. We can know the moistening of a wound because we know the more general case of moistening earth. However, etymologically, हेत्वर्थ does not mean “analogy,” but rather, something like “purpose of the reason.” The phrase “the sense of cause” that we have used leans on the use of the term in commentaries on the *Aṣṭādhyāyī* (*Kaumudī* on 2.3.23). The vulgate of the *Suśrutasaṃhitā* rewrites the principle, making it clearer that the principle means “clarification by analogy.” Cf. also Cakrapāṇi’s discussion at Si.12.41 (cara-trikamjī), where he explained the principle as using an explanation from one situation to clarify another situation. Cf. *Arthaśāstra* 5.1.13 (oliv-2013), which is also unclear.
- 464 Generally, शल्य refers to any painful foreign body embedded in the flesh that requires surgical removal.
- 465 This is a reference to 1.26.4 (vulgate) where शल्य is described in more detail as being of two kinds.

way." For example, one should not stay awake at night; one should not sleep during the day.

- 15 "Statement of reason (*apadeśa*)" refers to statements like "this happens because of this." For example, in the sentence "Sweet substances increase phlegm," the reason is stated.⁴⁶⁶
- 16 Substantiation of the subject matter through past evidence is "indication (*pradeśa*). For example, he pulled out Devadatta's splinter (*śalya*), therefore he will pull out Yajñadatta's.
- 17 Substantiation of the subject matter through a future event is "prediction (*atideśa*). For example, if his wind moves upwards, that will cause him to have colic."⁴⁶⁷
- 18 A deviation after generalization is exception (*apavarga*). For example, those afflicted by poison should not go through sudorific treatment other than the cases of poisoning by urinary worms.
- 19 Ellipsis (*vākyasheṣa*) refers to an unstated word that completes a sentence. For example, despite not mentioning the word 'person', when mentioning someone as 'the one having a head, hands, feet, flanks, and abdomen,' it's apparent that the reference is to a person.
- 20 *arthāpatti* (*Implication*) refers to an unstated idea that becomes evident through context. For example, when one said, "We will eat rice" it becomes evident from the context that he did not wish to drink gruel.
- 21 When there is the reversal of it it is contraposition (*viparyaya*). For example, when it is said, "Weak, dyspneic, and fearful people are difficult to treat," the converse holds true: "Those who are strong and so on are easily treatable."
- 22 Recontextualization (*prasaṅga*) refers to a concept common to another section. For example, a concept belonging to another section is brought up by mentioning it repeatedly throughout.
- 23 Invariable statement (*ekānta*) is one that is stated with certainty. For example, turpeth causes purgation; emetic nut induces vomiting.
- 24 Variable statement (*anekānta*) is one that is true in one way in some cases and in another way elsewhere. For example, some teachers identify the main element as substance, others as fluid, some as semen, and some as digestion.
- 25 A first point of view (*pūrvapakṣa*) is something stated with certainty.

⁴⁶⁶ A technical term also in Nyāyaśāstra (jhal-1978).

⁴⁶⁷ A technical term also in Nyāyaśāstra (jhal-1978).

For example, how are the four types of diabetes caused by wind incurable?⁴⁶⁸

- 26 Its answer is determination. For example, afflicting the body and trickling downwards, it creates urine mixed with fat, fatty tissues, and marrow. Thus, those caused by wind are incurable.
- 28 Consent (*anumata*) refers to others' opinion that is not rejected. For example, when the assertor says that there are six flavours and that somehow gets accepted with affirmation, it is termed consent.
- 29 Itemization (*vidhāna*) refers to sequentially ordered statements within a chapter. For example, the eleven lethal points of thigh are mentioned sequentially in a chapter.
- 30 A statement like "Thus will be stated" is future reference (*anāg-atāpekṣaṇa*) such as when he says in the *Sūtrasthāna*, "I will mention it in the *Cikitsāsthāna*."
- 31 A statement like "Thus has been stated" is past reference (*atīkrāntāpekṣaṇa*) such as when one says in the *Cikitsāsthāna*, "As mentioned in the *Sūtrasthāna*...."
- 32 An indication pointing to causes on both sides is doubt (*saṁśaya*). For example, a blow to ⁴⁶⁹ is fatal, whereas cutting hands and feet is not fatal.
- 33 An elaborate description is explication (*vyākhyāna*). For example, the twenty-fifth entity, , is being explicated here. Thus, no other Āyurvedic texts discuss entities beginning with matters.
- 34 Field-specific term (*svasaṁjñā*) is uncommon in other field of studies. The term used in one's own systems is called field-specific term, such as in this system, denotes honey and ghee, and denotes ghee, sesame oil and fat.
- 35 A customary portrayal is interpretation (*nirvacana*). For example, one goes along the shade fearing heat.
- 36 Providing examples is illustration (*nidarśana*). For example, just as fire spreads rapidly in a dry forest when accompanied by wind, a wound intensifies affected by wind, bile, and phlegm.
- 37 A statement like "This is the only way..." ...compulsion (*niyoga*). For

vasā / me-
das / maj-
jan

Does
bhūtādi a
compound
or it means
ahankāra or
ego?

⁴⁶⁸ The adverb निःसंशयम् is problematic: the example expresses a query or doubt, the opposite of certainty, which is answered in the next passage. It would seem to make more sense to read something like यस् तु संशयम् अभिधीयते स पूर्वपक्षः, but our manuscripts are unanimous in their reading.

⁴⁶⁹ तलहृदय is one of the muscle-group of lethal points mentioned in 3.6.7 (*vulgate*).

example, one should consume only a healthy diet.

- 39 A statement like “This and this...” is option (*vikalpa*). For example, in the section on meat, the major ones are blackbuck, deer, quail and part-ridge.⁴⁷⁰
- 38 A summarized statement is aggregation (*samuccaya*).⁴⁷¹ For example, let there be rice with meat broth, rice with milk, or burley with ghee.

A meaningful reading of these two rules would be

39 idaṃ vedaṃ veti vikalpaḥ / yathā rasodanaḥ kṣīrodanaḥ
saghr̥tā vā yavāgūr bhavatv iti //

38 saṃkṣepavacanāṃ samuccayaḥ / yathā māṃsavarge eṇa-
haraṇalāvatittirāḥ pradhānā iti

- 40 What is not explicitly stated but can be understood through discernment is deducible (*ūhya*). For example, in the section on rules of foods and drinks, four types of foods and drinks are mentioned— masticable (*bhakṣya*), edible (*bhojya*), suckable (*lehya*), and drinkable (*peya*). Thus, while four types are needed to be stated, two types are actually mentioned. Here it is deducible that in the section on foods and drinks, by specifically mentioning two types, the four types are also mentioned. Furthermore, a masticable item is not excluded from the category of food because it shares the same characteristic of solidity. A suckable item is not excluded from being classified as a drink because it shares the same characteristic of liquidity. Four types of aliments are rare. They are usually just twofold. Therefore, lord Dhanvantari says “Two-fold is popular”.

⁴⁷⁰ The example here matches समुच्चय (next text), not विकल्प. There seems to have been a metathesis of terms. **susr-trikamji1945** notes that this text and the next have been swapped in the Calcutta edition that includes Hārāṇacandra’s commentary **bhat-1910**, in the same way as in the Nepalese version.

⁴⁷¹ As stated in the previous footnote, the example here is of विकल्प, not समुच्चय.

Index of Manuscripts

Numbers after the final colon refer to pages in this book.

Bikaner RORI 5157: 96

Cambridge Add. 1693: 92

Hyderabad Osmania 137-3(b): 43

Kathmandu KL 699: 38, 44, 95, 155

Kathmandu NAK 1-1079: 11, 21, 39, 44

Kathmandu NAK 1-1146: 21

Kathmandu NAK 5-333: 11, 38, 44, 92, 97, 122

NAK 5-333: 110

Materia Medica

Numbers after the final colon refer to pages in this book.

- aconite leaf (?) (*viṣapatrikā*) Unknown. Cf. perhaps, *vatsanābha* (wolfsbane). Cf. **gvdb** : 105
- ‘alas, alas’ (*hālāhala*) unknown. See Cf. Soḍhalanighantu p.43 (sub bola) = stomaka = vatsanābha :
- Alexandrian laurel (*punnāga*) Calophyllum inophyllum, L. See **avs**, **NK** :
- amaranth (*taṇḍulīyaka*) Amaranthus hypochondriacus, L. See King 321, **NK**, **potter**. Cf. **avs** : 98
- arjun (*arjuna*) Terminalia arjuna, Bedd. See HK : 34
- ash gourd (*kūṣmāṇḍa*) → puṣpaphala. Beninkasa hispida, (Thunb.) Cogn. See **avs**; cf. **avs** :
- atis root (*śṛṅgīviṣa*) Aconitum heterophyllum, Wall. ex Royle. See **avs**, **NK** :
- axlewood (*dhava*) Anogeissus latifolia (Roxb. ex DC.) Wall. ex Guill & Perr. See **avs**, **chopra** : 34, 120
- bamboo leaves (*veṇupatrikā*) Bambusa bambos, Druce. See **NK** : 98
- banyan (*nyagrodha*) Ficus bengalensis, L. See HK :
- barley (*yava*) Hordeum vulgare, L. See HK : 79
- bearded premna (*vasuka*) Premna barbata Wall. (← *vasuhaṭṭa*), according to Cakrapānidatta. See the discussion by **gvdb**, where other candidate species such as Osmanthus, Calotropis, and Trianthema are discussed. **gvdb** note that when *vasuka* is mentioned with *vasira*, two varieties of salt are often meant (see ??). See also **NK** who identifies it with Indigofera enneaphylla, Linn. (Birdsville Indigo), apparently without controversy :
- beautyberry (*priyaṅgu*) → *śyāmā*. Callicarpa macrophylla, Vahl. See **avs**, **NK**. Some say also Setaria italica Beauv. **gvdb**. See also **gvdb** : 34, 116, 121
- beautyberry (*śyāmā*) Callicarpa macrophylla, Vahl. See **avs**, **NK** : 74, 96, 98
- beggarweed (*aṃśumatī*) Desmodium gangeticum (L.) DC (**dymock**, **meul-plants1**, **NK**; **adps**, 414 and **avs**, 4.366 are confusing) : 116
- beggarweed (*vidārigandhā*) → *śālāparṇī*. Desmodium gangeticum (L.) DC. See **dymock**, **meul-plants1**, cf. **NK**; **adps** and **avs**, 4.366 are confusing : 43, 79
- beggarweed (*śālāparṇī*) → *sthirā*. Desmodium gangeticum (L.) DC. See **dymock**, **meul-plants1**, **NK**; **adps**, 414 and **avs**, 4.366 are confusing :
- Bengal quince (*bilva*) Aegle marmelos (L.) Corr. See **avs**, Chevallier 159, **NK**, (**moni-sans**) : 63, 70, 72, 76
- ‘big poison’ (*mahāviṣa*) unknown. See ? :

- 'big thorn apple' (*mahākarambha*) *Datura metel*, L.?. See thorn apple (*karambha*) : bitumen (*adrija*) → *śilājī*. A tar-like, black, resinous rock exudate. See **josi-maha** : 130
- black cardamom (*Xhareṇu*) *Amomum subulatum*, Roxb.?. See PVS Caraka 2.734, **avs**, **NK**, *pace* **gvdb** :
- black creeper (*pālindī*) *Ichnocarpus frutescens*, (L.) R.Br. or *Cryptolepis buchanani*, Roemer & Schultes. See **avs**, **NK**, **adps**. *Ḍalhaṇa* on SS 5.1.82 identified *pālindī* with *trivṛt* (turpeth) and **gvdb** supported this as a usual identification : 98, 101, 115, 116
- black pepper (*marica*) *Piper nigrum*, L. See **adps**, **NK** : 79
- black pepper (*vallīja*) → *marica*. *Piper nigrum*, L.?. See **NK**; Rā.6.115, Dha.4.85, Dha.2.88 :
- blackboard tree (*saptachada*) *Alstonia scholaris* R. Br. **gvdb** : 97
- blackbuck (*hariṇa*) *Antelope cervicapra*, L. See **bia** **IW** : 101
- 'blade' (*kartariya*) unknown. See ? :
- blue water-lily (*utpala*) *Nymphaea stellata*, Willd. See **meul-plants**¹, **IGP** 790; **duṭṭ-1922**, **NK** : 25, 96, 115, 116
- bottle gourd (*ālābūka*) *Lagenaria siceria* (Molina) Standl. See **IGP** 645, **NK** :
- bulrush (*kaśeru*) "Two species, *Scirpus kysoor* Roxb., and *S. grossus* Linn. f. are used" **gvdb**. Also *kaśeruka* and *kaseru* : 74, 75, 78
- calamine lotion (*amṛtasaṅga*) → *amṛtasaṅga*. Zinc carbonate. See **NK** :
- camphor (*karpūra*) → *śītaśiva*. *Cinnamomum camphora*, (L.) Sieb. See **IGP** 253 :
- cannabis (*vijayā*) *Cannabis sativa*, L. See **avs**, **NK** :
- caper (*karīra*) *Capparis decidua* (Forsk.) Edgew. See **avs**, (**moni-sans**) :
- cardamom (*elā*) *Elettaria cardamomum*, Maton. See **avs**, **NK**, **potter** : 70, 116, 121
- carmarī (*carmarī*) unknown. See ? :
- carray cheddie (*gāṅgerukī*) → *viśvadevā*. *Canthium parviflorum*, Lam. See **avs** :
- cassia cinnamon (*patra*) *Cinnamomum tamala*, (Buch.-Ham.) Nees. See **avs**, **NK** : 70, 76, 98, 116
- castor oil tree (*gandharvahasta*) → *eraṇḍa*. **gvdb**, **imp** : 39, 72
- castor-oil (*eraṇḍa*) *Ricinus communis*, L. See **NK**, **chopra** : 44
- certain minerals (*tārāvitāra*) Unknown. It is not even certain that these are minerals. The variant reading in the vulgate, *tāraḥ sutāraḥ* was glossed by *Ḍalhaṇa* on 5.3.14 (**vulgate**) as follows *tāro rūpyaṃ, sutāraḥ pāradah*, "tāra means silver; sutāra means mercury." : 120
- Ceylon iron wood (*kṣīrikā*) *Mimusops hexandra*, Roxb. (**gvdb**) :
- chaff (*kāṇḍana*) The word *kāṇḍana* is not found in dictionaries; *kaṇḍana* is threshing, separating the chaff from the grain in a mortar. Cf. Hemādri's *Caturvargacintāmaṇi* (**pwk**) (**siro-1873**, citing the *Vāyupurāṇa*) : 26, 213
- chebulic myrobalan (*harītakī*) *Terminalia chebula* Retz. **gvdb** : 77, 97
- cherry (*elavālu*) *Prunus cerasus*, L.?. See **BVDB** 58, **NK**, **gvdb** : 116
- chital deer (*prṣata*) *Axis axis*, Erxleben. See **bia**, **IW** : 101
- 'choice tree' (*varadāru*) unknown. See ? :
- chukar partridge (*cakora*) *Alectoris chukar*. See **collins** :
- cinnamon (*tvac*) *Cinnamomum cassia*, Blume. See **NK** :
- citron (*mātuluṅga*) *Citrus medica*, Linn. **gvdb**. Also spelled *mātuliṅga*, *mātulaṅga*, *mātulāṅga* : 63, 76, 81, 82
- cluster fig (*udumbara*) *Ficus racemosa*, L. See **adps** :
- cobra's saffron (*nāgapuṣpa*) → *nāgakeśara*. *Mesua ferrea*, L. See **NK**, **gvdb** : 116
- common crane (*krauñca*) *Grus grus*. See **collins** :

- common mallow (*suvarcalā*) perhaps
Malva sylvestris, L. A difficult plant to
identify, see **gvdb** :
- common mallow (*sūryāvarta*) Malva
sylvestris, L. Cakrapāṇidatta and
Dālhaṇa identify it with *suvarcalā*, itself
a difficult plant to identify. Perhaps
Helianthus, see **gvdb** :
- corky coral tree (*pāribhadra*) Erythrina
suberosa Roxb. See **gvdb** 245: 120
- costus (*kuṣṭha*) Saussurea costus, Clarke.
See **NK**: 70, 76, 98, 116, 121
- cottony jujube (*kākolī*) Ziziphus
mauritanica, Lam. See **IGP, NK; IGP**
1233. Cf. **NK**: 69, 75, 76
- country mallow (*atibalā*) Abutilon
indicum, (L.) Sweet, but may be other
kinds of mallow, e.g., Sida rhombifolia,
L.. See **NK, IGP, NK, adps**: 43, 75,
78, 163
- country sarsaparilla (*anantā*) Hemidesmus
indicus, (L.) R. Br. See **adps, avs**–5,
NK. But see **gvdb** for complications
that may suggest that it is to be equated
with *sārivā*, which may sometimes be
Cryptolepis or Ichnocarpus frutescens
R. Rr. (**gvdb**): 43, 105, 115, 116, 120
- crape jasmine (*nata*) → crape jasmine
gvdb: 208, 210
- crape jasmine (*tagara*) Tabernaemontana
divaricata (L.) R.Br. ex Roem. &
Schultes. See **meul-plants₁, avs**.
Synonym of crape jasmine. But some
say Valeriana jatamansi, Jones See **gvdb**
for discussion (and charming
comments on brain liquid testing).
Some say *tagara* is Indian rose-bay or
Indian valerian, but there remain many
historical questions about the ancient
and regional identities of this plant See,
e.g., **avs**: 70, 76, 98, 116, 208, 210
- crimson trumpet-flower tree (*pāṭalā*)
Stereospermum chelonides, (L. f.) A.
DC. See **meul-plants₁, avs, adps, avs,**
IGP 1120, **dymock**: 120
- cucumber (*trapusa*) Cucumis sativus, L.
See **avs, NK** :
- cuscut grass (*uśīra*) Andropogon
murcatus, Retz. Also “vetiver grass.”
See **NK**: 98
- ‘dangling’ (*lambā*) unknown. See ? :
- datura (*dhattūra*) Datura metel, L. See **avs**
(cf. *Abhidhānanaṁjārī*), **NK, potter,**
adps: 40
- deodar (*bhadrādāru*) Cedrus deodara,
(Roxb.ex D.Don) G. Don. See **avs** 41,
NK: 34, 74, 79, 116
- deodar (*devadāru*) Cedrus deodara (Roxb.)
Loud. **gvdb**: 63, 76, 163
- dhaman tree (*dhanvaṅga*) → dhammaṇa?
Grewia tiliaefolia, Vahl. See **avs, IK,**
avs, IGP 529 (tiliifolia) :
- dried ginger (*śuṇṭhī*) Zingiber officinale,
Roscoe. See **adps, NK, avs, IGP**: 74
- dried meat (*vallūra*) **moni-sans, josi-maha**.
The term is used, rarely, in both the CS
(1.5.10) and SS (1.13. 16, 6.42.75–76). It
is a Dravidian loanword and occurs in
the *Arthaśāstra* etc. (**mayr-kurz**): 25
- drum-giver (?) (*lambaradā*) Unknown; cf.
gvdb: 105
- elixir salve (*rasāñjana*) → *añjana*. See
Indian barberry: 34, 44
- embelia (*viḍaṅga*) Embelia ribes, Burm. f.
See **adps, avs, NK, potter**: 34, 70, 116
- emblic (*āmalaka*) Phyllanthus emblica, L.
See **avs**: 77, 78
- emetic nut (*karaghāṭa*) Probably a synonym
for *karahāṭa* (emetic nut), q.v., **gvdb**:
209
- emetic nut (*karahāṭa*) Randia dumetorum,
Lamk. See **gvdb** and **NK**. **gvdb** noted
that it may be a synonym for *karaghāṭa*,
emetic nut, and pointed rather to
Gardenia turgida Roxb. on the basis of
local knowledge in U. P.: 209, 211
- emetic nut (*madana*) Randia dumetorum,
Lamk. See **NK**: 96, 165
- false daisy (*subhaṅgurā*) (su)bhaṅgura =
bhṛṅga? Eclipta prostrata (L.) L. See

- gvdb** : 104
 fermented rice-water (*dhānyāmla*) → *kāñjī*,
kāñjikā, *sauvīra*. **gvdb**, **NK** : 41, 42
 fern (*ajaruhā*) *Nephrodium* species **gvdb**,
 uncertain. Perhaps *Christella*
dentata (Forssk.) Brownsey & Jermy,
 which is reported to have folk
 applications against skin diseases in
 India : 100
 fire-flame bush (*dhātakī*) *Woodfordia*
fruticosa (L.) Kurz. See **avs**, **NK** : 97
 five-leaved chaste tree (*śephālikā*) *Vitex*
negundo, L. See **NK** (cf. use of leaves),
IGP, **moni-sans** :
 flax (*atasī*) *Linum usitatissimum*, L. See
NK #1495 : 75
 'foam-stone' (*phenāśma*) unknown. See ? :
 fragrant lotus (*saugandhika*) A type of
kumuda or *utpala* (**gvdb**) : 25
 galls (*karkaṭa*) *Rhus succedanea*, L. See
NK :
 garden pea (*kalāya*) *Pisum sativum*, L. See
avs, **IGP** 901; cf. **NK** :
 garjan oil tree (*aśvakarṇa*) *Dipterocarpus*
turbinatus Gaertn. f. See **gvdb**, **chopra** :
 120
 'gentle' (*somā*) *Ruta graveolens*, L., or
Sarcostemma brevistigma, W & A, etc.
 See **NK**; **potter** :
 giant potato (*kṣīravidārī*) possibly →
kṣīraśukla. *Ipomoea mauritiana*, Jacq. See
adps, **avs**, **avs** : 75, 210, 212, 213
 ginger (*mahaṣadha*) *Zingiber officinale*,
 Roscoe. See **adps**, **NK**, **IGP** : 101
 'gladdener' (*nandana*) unknown. See ? :
 gold (*hema*) gold : 116
 gold and sarsaparilla (*surendragopa*)
 Unknown. *Dalhāṇa* on 5.3.15 (**vulgate**)
 glossed *surendra* as "gold" and *gopā* as
 "Indian sarsaparilla." He also noted
 other opinions that *surendra* was
 "Tellicherry bark" : 120
 golden shower tree (*rājadruma*) *rājadruma*
 = *āragvadha*. *Cassia fistula* L. See **gvdb**
 37 : 120
 golden shower tree (*āragvadha*) *Cassia*
fistula L. See **gvdb** 37 : 77
 gourd (*alābu*) *Lagenaria siceraria* Standl.
gvdb. Some say *Lagenaria vulgaris*,
Seringe (**NK**) but this is not
 appropriate for blood-letting : 21, 22, 97
 green gram (*māṣa*) *Vigna radiata* (L.) R.
 Wilcz. See **adps**, **IGP** 1204 : 34, 75, 163
 'gutboiler' (*antrapācaka*) unknown. See ? :
 hare foot uraria (*prśniparṇī*) → *sahā*?
Uraria lagopoides, DC. See
meul-plants¹, **dymock**, **avs**, **NK**; **adps**,
avs and **avs** are confusing : 74, 75
 heart-leaf sida (*balā*) *Sida cordifolia*, Linn.
 See **adps**, **NK** : 43, 75, 78, 80, 116, 163
 heart-leaved moonseed (*amṛtavallī*) See
 heart-leaved moonseed (*amṛtā*) : 162
 heart-leaved moonseed (*amṛtā*) → *guḍūcī*.
Tinospora cordifolia, (Willd.) Hook.f.
 & Thoms.? See **adps**, **NK**, *Dastur* #229 :
 98, 114, 209
 heart-leaved moonseed (*guḍūcī*) *Tinospora*
cordifolia (Willd.) Miers. **gvdb**, **NK** :
 76
 heart-leaved moonseed (*somavallī*)
Tinospora cordifolia (Thunb.) Miers.
gvdb. Likely, but uncertain : 98
 heliotrope (*hastīśuṇḍa*) → *ibhagandhā*?
Heliotropium indicum, L. See **avs**, **NK** :
 henna (*madayantikā*) *Lawsonia inermis*, L.
 See **avs**, **NK**, **potter** : 99
 hill myna (*sārikā*) *Acridotheres tristis*
tristis, L., etc. See *Ali* #1006, **dave**,
collins :
 Himalayan mayapple (*vakra*)
Podophyllum emodi, Wall. (**NK**). But
 perhaps a synonym of crape jasmine and
 crape jasmine (**gvdb**) : 121
 Himalayan monkshood (*ativīṣā*) → *viṣā*
Aconitum heterophyllum Wall. **gvdb**,
NK. Also "atis roots" : 67, 99, 101, 121
 Himalayan monkshood (*viṣā*) → *ativīṣā*
gvdb : 212
 hogweed (*punarnavā*) *Boerhaavia diffusa*,
 L. See **adps**, **avs**, **NK** : 77, 99, 115

- Holostemma creeper (*jīvantī*) → *sūryavallī*? Holostemma ada-kodien, Schultes. See **adps**, **avs**, **NK**: 78, 212
- honey (*kṣaudra*) Eight varieties of honey are described in the SS (**NK**). *Kṣaudra* is the product of a small bee of tawny colour, called *kṣudra*: 83, 101
- horned pondweed (*śaivāla*) also *śaivāla*, *śevāra*. Zannichellia palustris L. The uncertainties of this identification are discussed by **gvdb**. Sometimes identified with scutch grass (*dūrvā*) (**gvdb**). Identified as Ceratophyllum demersum Linn. ("hornwort") by **avsx**: 76, 210, 213
- hornwort (*jalanīlikā*) Ceratophyllum demersum, L. See **avs**, **IGP** 232:
- hornwort (*jalaśūka*) → *jalanīlikā*. Ceratophyllum demersum, L. See **avs**, **IGP**. **gvdb** suggest horned pondweed. Ḍalhaṇa noted on 1.16.19 (**vulgate**) that some people interpret it as a poisonous, hairy, air-breathing, underwater creature: 43
- horseradish tree (*śigru*) Moringa oleifera Lam. See **IGP** 759, **meul-plants1**, **dymock**: 76, 77
- hyacinth bean (*śimbī*) Dolichos lablab, L. See **NK**:
- Indian antelope (*eṇa*) Antelope cervicapra, L. See **bia**:
- Indian barberry (*añjana*) → *rasañjana*, *dāruharidrā*. Berberis aristata, DC. **dymock**, **NK**, **meul-plants1**, **IGP**: 44, 100, 209
- Indian barberry (*dāruharidrā*) Berberis aristata, DC. See **dymock**, **NK**, **meul-plants1**, **IGP** 141: 115, 116
- Indian barberry (*kālīyaka*) → *dāruharidrā*, *añjana*. Berberis aristata, DC. See **dymock**, **NK**, **meul-plants1**, **IGP**: 98
- Indian beech (*naktamāla*) Pongamia pinnata, (L.) Pierre. See **avs**, **NK**: 34, 72
- Indian ipecac (*payasyā*) Uncertain. Possibly Tylophora indica (Burm.f.) Merr. Perhaps a synonym of panacea twiner, giant potato, purple roscoe, and plants like asthma plant and Gulf sandmat (**gvdb**). Also "curds" when not a plant: 43, 76, 212
- Indian kudzu (*vidārī*) → *payasyā*. Pueraria tuberosa (Willd.) DC. See **adps**, **avs**, **av**; not **dymock**. See **meul-plants2**, **av**, but **av** = Ipomoea mauritiana, Jacq: 43, 63
- Indian laburnum (*śampāka*) Cassia fistula, L. See **adps**, **avs**, **av**, **IGP** 215:
- Indian laurel (*plakṣa*) Ficus microcarpa, L. f. See **adps**:
- Indian madder (*mañjiṣṭhā*) Rubia cordifolia, L. See **IGP**, **chopra**, **gvdb**: 39, 116
- Indian mottled eel (*varmimatsya*) Almost certainly the mottled eel. **moni-sans** noted that the *varmi* fish "is commonly called *vāmi*." The "vam fish," or "বান মাই (*bān māich*)" in Bengal, is a marine and freshwater eel, *Anguilla bengalensis*. It is the most common eel in Indian inland waters and a prized food fish (**froe-2022**). However, some NIA languages identify the "vam" fish with the Indian Pike Conger, *Congresox talabonides* (Bleeker) (**talw-1984**): 23
- Indian mustard (*sarṣapa*) Brassica juncea, Czern. & Coss. See **avs**, **NK**: 26
- Indian pennywort (*maṇḍūkapaṇī*) Centella asiatica (L.) Urban. See **gvdb**, **adps**:
- Indian sarsaparilla (*sārivā*) → *anantā*. Hemidesmus indicus, (L.) R. Br. **adps**, **av**–5, **NK**; and black creeper, pāliṇḍī. Ichnocarpus frutescens, (L.) R.Br. or Cryptolepis buchanani, Roemer & Schultes **av**s, 3.145, 3.203, **NK**, **adps**: 115, 116, 209
- Indian snakeroot (*sarpagandhā*) Rauvolfia serpentina, (L.) Benth. ex Kurz. See **NK**, **adps**, **gvdb**; cf. SS 5.5.76–78: 213
- Indian spinach (*pūtīkā*) Basella alba, L. See

- NK** (rubra), **adps**, **avs**, **IGP** 129b :
indigo (*nīlinī*) Indigofera tinctoria, L. See **NK** :
Indrajao (*vr̥kṣaka*) → *indrayava*, *indrabīja*,
kaliṅga, and *kuṭaja*. Holarrhena
antidysenterica Wall. **gvdb** : 162
jackfruit (*panasa*) Artocarpus
heterophyllus, Lam. See **NK**, **IGP** 99 :
jambul (*jambū*) Syzygium cumini, (L.)
Skeels. See **adps**, **NK**, **potter**,
wuja-2003b : 97
jasmine (*mālātī*) Jasminium grandiflorum,
L. See **NK** : 98
jequirity (*guñjā*) Abrus precatorius, L. See
avs, **NK**, **potter** : 104, 105
jequirity (*kālakūṭa*) Abrus precatorius, L.?
Cf. RRS 21.14. See **avs**, **NK**, **potter** :
'juice-cooker' (*sārapāka*) unknown. See ? :
(?) (*karaṭā*) Not in **gvdb**. Cf. perhaps
karahāṭa (emetic nut) : 105
khesari pea (*tripuṭa*) tripuṭa(kalāya).
Lathyrus sativus, L. See **IGP** 651, **NK** :
koel (*kokila*) Eudynamys scolopacea. See
collins :
kumudvatī (*kumudvatī*) unknown. See ? :
lac (*jatu*) Kerria lacca (Kerr.). See
<http://www.icar.org.in/ilri/default.htm> :
lac (*lākṣā*) Kerria lacca (Kerr.). See
meul-plants1, **NK**. **watt-comm** is
characteristically informative, and is
definite about the antiquity of lac in
India : 121
lāmajja grass (*lāmajj*) Andropogon
iwarancusa, Roxb. See **NK** :
lāmajja grass (*uśīrabheda*) → *lāmajja*.
Andropogon iwarancusa, Roxb. See
NK :
leadwort (*agnīśikhā*) Plumbago zeylanica
(or rosea?), L. See **NK** :
leadwort (*citraka*) Plumbago zeylanica (or
indica?), L. See RĀ. 6.124, **adps**, **NK** :
34, 67, 72, 82
leadwort (*pālaka*) → *citraka*. Plumbago
zeylanica (indica? rosea?), L. See Rā.
6.124, **adps**, **NK** :
leadwort (*vidyutśikhā*) Synonym of
agnīśikhā (leadwort), q.v. :
liquorice (?) (*klītaka*) Glycyrrhiza glabra,
L.? **gvdb** discuss the many difficulties
in identifying this plant : 104
liquorice (*madhuka*) see *yaṣṭīmadhuka* : 43,
74–79, 81, 101, 114, 116
liquorice (*yaṣṭīmadhuka*) Glycyrrhiza
glabra, L. **avs**, **NK**, **gvdb** : 44
'little bamboo' (*veṇukā*) Bambusa bambos,
Druce?. See **NK** :
lodh tree (*lodhra*) Symplocos racemosa,
Roxb. See **meul-plants1**, **adps**, **NK**.
gvdb notes that there are two varieties,
S. racemosa, qualified as *sāvāra*, and S.
crataegoides Buch.-Ham. for *paṭṭikā*
lodhra : 34, 116
lodh tree (*rodhra*) Symplocos racemosa,
Roxb. See **adps**, **NK** :
lodh tree (*śāvāra*) → *lodhra*. Symplocos
racemosa, Roxb. See **adps**, **NK** :
long pepper (*māgadha*) Piper longum, L.
See **NK**; but cf. **avs** : 100
long pepper (*pippalī*) Piper longum, L. See
adps, **NK** : 72, 77, 81–83, 101, 116, 162
lotus stalk (*mṛṇālā*) "Leaf stalk of sacred
lotus" **gvdb** : 76
luffa (*garāgarī*) → gargaraka? Luffa
echinata, Roxb. See **NK** :
luffa (*kośātaka*) = *kośītakī*, luffa :
luffa (*kośātakya*) Luffa cylindrica, (L.) M. J.
Roem. or L. acutangula, (L.) Roxb. See
adps, **NK** etc :
luffa (*kośītakī*) = *kośītakī*. Luffa cylindrica,
(L.) M. J. Roem. or L. acutangula, (L.)
Roxb. **adps**, **NK**, **gvdb** : 97, 114, 211
luffa gourd (*kośavatī*) = *kośītakī*, luffa : 114
mahua (*madhūka*) Madhuca longifolia,
(Koenig) Macbride. See **avs** :
maidenhair fern (*haṃsāhvayā*) Adiantum
lunulatum Burm f. **gvdb** : 162
mango (*āmra*) Mangifera indica Linn.
gvdb : 97
marking-nut tree (*aruṣkara*) Semecarpus
anacardium L. See *bhallātaka*

- (marking-nut tree) : 105
 marking-nut tree (*bhallātaka*) *Semecarpus anacarium*, L. See **NK**, **avs** : 72, 100, 211
 medhshingi (*vijayā*2) *Dolichandrone falcata* (DC.) The *Sauśrutaniḥṣaṇṭu* gives a number of synonyms for *vijayā* (**suve-2000**). But one of them, *viṣāṇī* (also *meṣaśṛṅgī*), is sometimes equated with *Dolichandrone falcata* (DC.)
Seemann (**adpsgvdb**, a plant used as an abortifacient and fish poison (**NK**) : 105
 Midday flower (*bandhūka*) *Pentapetes phoenicea*, L. See **NK**, **gvdb** :
 migraine tree (*agnimantha*) *Premna corymbosa*, Rottl. See **avs** 1927, **adps**, **NK**, **avs**; **meul-plants**₁ : = P.
integrifolia/*serratifolia*, L : 114
 milk-white (*kṣīraśuklā*) An unidentified plant. **gvdb**: see purple *roscoe*a and giant potato : 43, 213
 mongoose (*nakula*) *nakula*. *Urva edwardsii* or the often sympatric *U. auro-punctatus* (small Indian mongoose, usually an eater of smaller creatures than snakes) (**bia**), On mongooses and snakes, see **biaIW** : 101
 monitor lizard (*godhā*) *Varanus bengalensis*, Schneider. See **dani-1983** : 43, 101
 monkey jack (*lakuca*) *Artocarpus lakoocha*, Roxb. ex Buch.-Ham. See **meul-plants**₁, **IGP** 99, **IPM** 3.2338f., pace **avs** :
 ‘muddy’ (*kardama*) unknown. See ? :
 mung beans (*mudga*) *Phaseolus radiatus* L. **gvdb** : 75, 78, 146
 mung beans (*māṣaka*) *Phaseolus mungo* Linn. **gvdb** : 98
 munj grass (*nārācaka*) *Saccharum bengalense*, Retz.?. See **NK** :
 myrobalan (*abhayā*) *Terminalia chebula*, Retz. See **adps**, **NK**, **potter** : 67, 114, 121
 myrobalans (*pathyā*) *Terminalia chebula* Retz. See **NK** :
 natron (*suvarcikā*) Sodium carbonate. **NK**. *Dalhaṇa* identifies *suvarcikā* with *svarjikṣāra* 4.8.50 (**vulgate**) : 82, 116
 neem tree (*nimba*) *Azadirachta indica* A. Juss. **gvdb** : 40, 162
 nutgrass (*kuruvinda*) Unknown. *Dalhaṇa* on 5.3.15 (**vulgate**) glossed the term as nutgrass, but noted other opinions that it was a whetstone or a very special metallic gem. **gvdb** added that it could be a variety of rice, *ṣaṣṭika dhānya* : 120
 nutgrass (*mustaka*) *Cyperus rotundus*, L. See **adps**, **avs**, **NK** :
 nutgrass (*mustā*) *Cyperus rotundus*, L. See **adps**, **avs**, **NK** : 212
 oleander spurge (*snuhī*) *Euphorbia neriifolia*, L., or *E. antiquorum*, L. See **adps**, **avs**, **avs**, **NK**, **IGP** 457b :
 orpiment (*haritāla*) *Arsenii trisulphidum*. See **NK** v. 2, p. 20 ff :
 panacea twiner (*arkaparṇī*) See *arkapuṣpī*, panacea twiner :
 panacea twiner (*arkapuṣpī*) → *arkaparṇī*, *Tylophora indica* (Burm. f.) Merr. **gvdb**. Maybe identical to Indian *ipecac*, giant potato and similar sweet, milky plants. See **gvdb** for discussion. For discussion in the context of *Holostemma creeper*, see **adps** and **avs**. The etymology of the name suggests *Helianthus annuus* Linn., but this plant is native to the Americas : 115, 210
 parakeet (*śuka*) *Psittacula krameri/eupatria/cyanocephala*. See **collins** :
 peacock (*mayūra*) *Pavo cristatus*. See **collins** :
 peas (*hareṇu*) *hareṇu* = *satīna*. *Pisum sativum*, L. **gvdb** notes that two plants are usually meant under this name, but there is no agreement on the identity of the second : 76, 115, 116, 121
 peepul tree (*aśvattha*) *Ficus religiosa*, L. See **adps** : 123
 periploca of the woods (*meṣaśṛṅga*) *Gymnema sylvestre* (Retz.) R. Br. See **avs**, **NK** : 100

- pheasant peacock (*jīvajīvaka*) *jīvajīvaka*. ?.
See ? :
- plants like asthma plant and Gulf sandmat
(*kṣīriṇī*) various milky plants, perhaps
including *Euphorbia hirta* Linn.
(asthma plant) and *E. microphylla*
Heyne (Gulf sandmat) (**gvdb**) : 210
- plumed cockscomb (*indīvara*) Uncertain;
possibly *Celosia argentea* Linn. But see
the useful discussion in **gvdb**. Possibly
another name for thorn apple
(*karambha*), q.v. : 214
- pointed gourd (*paṭola*) *Trichosanthes*
dioica, Roxb. **gvdb** : 76, 114
- poison berry (*brhatī*) *Solanum violaceum*,
Ortega. See **adps**, **NK**, **avs** : 72, 77,
115, 116
- poison-altar (?) (*viṣavedikā*) Unknown.
Possibly, at a guess, *viṣamuṣṭika*
(strychnine tree)? **gvdb** Or *viṣā*
(Himalayan monkshood) : 105
- pomegranate (*dāḍima*) *Punica granatum*
Linn. **gvdb** : 63, 81, 82
- pondweed (*paripelavā*) Normally a neuter
noun. **gvdb** argued that *plava* and
śaivāla are the same thing, and may be
either *Zannichellia palustris*, L., or
Potamogeton pectinatus, L. : 116
- pondweed (*śevāla*) *Zannichellia palustris*
L. See horned pondweed : 25
- portia tree (*pārīṣa*) *Thespesia populnea*
(L.) Sol. ex. Corr. See **adps** :
- prickly chaff-flower (*apāmārga*)
Achyranthes aspera, L. See
meul-plants1, **avs**, **adps**, **avs**, **dymock** :
39, 43, 75
- prickly chaff-flower (*vasira*) also *vaśīra*.
Perhaps *Achyranthes aspera*, L. **gvdb**
describes several possible identities,
including *sūryāvarta*, prickly
chaff-flower and *markaṭatṛṇa*. See also
two kinds of salt (**gvdb**) :
- prickly chaff-flower (*vaśīra*) See prickly
chaff-flower :
- prickly-leaved elephant's foot (*gojihvā*) →
gojī. *Elephantopus scaber*, L. See **avs** :
purging nut (*dravantī*) → *mūṣikaparṇī*.
Jatropha curcas, L. See **avs**, **NK** :
purging nut (*mūṣikā*) *Jatropha curcas*, L.
See **avs**, **NK** : 100
- purple calotropis (*arka*) *Calotropis*
gigantea, (L.) R. Br. See **adps**, **avs**, **NK**,
potter, **chop-1958** : 34, 43, 72
- purple calotropis (*khadyotaka*) → *arka*?
Calotropis gigantea, (L.) R. Br. See
adps, **avs**, **NK**, **potter** :
- purple roscoeia (*kṣīrakākoli*) **gvdb** notes
that many physicians use *Roscoeia*
procera Wall. in this context. But the
identification is uncertain. Possibly
connected to milk-white or giant
potato : 75, 210, 212
- racket-tailed drongo (*bhṛṅgarāja*) *Dicrurus*
paradiseus. See **collins** :
- radish (*mūlaka*) *Raphanus sativus*, L. See
NK : 79, 80
- rajmahal hemp (*moraṭa*) → *mūrvī*,
Marsdenia tenacissima (Roxb.) Wight
et Arn. Good discussion at **gvdb** : 114
- rajmahal hemp (*mūrvī*) → *moraṭa*,
Marsdenia tenacissima (Roxb.) Wight
et Arn. Good discussion at **gvdb** :
- rattan (*vetra*) *Calamus rotang*, L. See **avs**,
NK :
- red chalk (*gairika*) *gairika* : 116
- red gourd (*bimbī*) *Coccinia indica*, W. & A.
See PVS 1994.4.715; **NK** : 97
- ribbed gourd (*karkoṭaka*) *Luffa acutangula*,
(L.) Roxb.? (*Mormodica*
cochinchinensis, Spreng.? Cf. *Luffa*
tuberosa). See **avs** (**NK**; **NK**) :
- rice grains (*taṇḍula*) *Oriza sativa*, Linn.
Same as unhusked rice (*śālī*) **gvdb**; or
just "grains" : 26
- rice-grain chaff (*śālitaṇḍulakāṇḍana*) See
chaff : 26
- rock salt (*saindhava*) See **NK**, **watt-comm** :
26, 63, 82
- rosha grass (*dhyāmaka*) *Cymbopogon*
martinii (Roxb.) Wats. See **avs**, **NK** :

- 116
sacred grass (*kuśa*) *Desmostachya*
bipinnata, Stapf. See **avs**, Kew : 75
sacred lotus (*kamala*) *Nelumbo nucifera*
Gaertn. **gvdb** : 211
sacred lotus (*padma*) *Nelumbo nucifera*,
Gaertn. See **NK** : 25, 76, 98
sacred lotus (*prapuṇḍarīka*) *Nelumbo*
nucifera, Gaertn. See Dutt 110, **NK** :
sage-leaved alangium (*aṅkollā*) *Alangium*
salvifolium (Linn. f.) Wang. **gvdb** : 97
sage-leaved alangium (*aṅkoṭa*) *Alangium*
salvifolium, (L. f.) Wang. See **avs**; cf.
NK :
sal tree (*śālā*) *Shorea robusta*, Gaertn.f. See
avs :
sandalwood (*candana*) *Santalum album*, L.
See **adps**, **NK** : 76, 78, 116
sappan wood (*pataṅga*) *Caesalpinia*
sappan, L. See **avs**, **avs** :
sappanwood (*pattāṅga*) Also *pattāṅga*.
Caesalpinia sappan, L. **avs**, **imp**, **gvdb** :
44
scaly, red-streaked fish (*cilicima*) An
unidentified fish that is absolutely not
to be eaten with milk. Described in
Bhela (1.12.7), Caraka (1.26.83) and
Suśruta (1.20.8, 13). Circular, red
streaks, round eyes and prominent
scales, and "normally goes on land." :
scarlet mallow (*bandhujīva*) *Pentapetes*
phoenicea, L. **NK**, **gvdb** : 99
scented pavonia (*bālaka*) *Pavonia odorata*,
Willd. See **adps**, **NK** : 116
scented pavonia (*toya*) → *bālaka*? *Pavonia*
odorata, Willd. **adps**, **NK** :
scutch grass (*dūrvā*) *Cynodon dactylon*
(Linn.) Pers. (**gvdb**) : 210
selu plum (*śelu*) *Cordia myxa*, L. non
Forssk. See **meul-plants**₁ (2), **IGP**, cf.
avs; cf. **avs** (*C. dichotoma*, Forst.f.), **NK**
(*C. latifolia*, Roxb.) : 77, 114
sesame (*tila*) *Sesamum indicum* L. **gvdb** :
sesame oil (*taila*) *Sesamum indicum* L.
gvdb : 43
sheep (*urabhra*) *Ovis orientalis*, Gmelin?.
See BIA 249 :
silk-cotton tree (*śālmālī*) *Bombax*
malabarica. See **issa-1994** :
siris (*śirīṣa*) *Albizia lebbbeck*, Benth. See
avs, **NK** : 114
siris seeds (*śirīṣamāṣaka*) *Albizia lebbbeck*,
Benth. See **avs**, **NK** : 97
small-flowered crape myrtle (*sidhraka*)
Lagerstroemia parviflora Roxb. See
gvdb : 120
'snake mallow' (*mahābalā*) → *sahadevā*.
Sida spinosa, L. See **NK**, **adps**, Index
Kewensis :
'snake-killer' (*sarpaghāti*) unknown. See ? :
snakeroot (*sugandhā*) → *sarpagandhā*
Rauvolfia serpentina Benth. ex. Kurz.
See Indian snakeroot. But may be
Aristolochia indica Linn. Has been
identified with ??, or ??. See (**gvdb**) :
104
soda crystals (*suvarjikā*) Sodium
carbonate. See **NK** :
spikenard (*jaṭāmāṁsī*) *Nardostachys*
jatamansi DC **gvdb**, etc :
spikenard (*māṁsī*) *Nardostachys*
grandiflora, DC. See **NK** : 116
spikenard (*nalada*) → *māṁsī*.
Nardostachys grandiflora, DC. See **NK** :
95
spiny bitter cucumber (*karkāruka*)
Momordica cochinchinensis (Lour.)
Spreng., (Thunb.) Cogn. See **avs**, **IGP**
754 (or *Beninkasa hispida*? **avs**; cf.
avs) :
strychnine tree (*viṣamuṣṭika*) *Strychnos*
nux vomica Linn. **gvdb** : 212
sugar (*sitā*) *Ḍalhaṇa* makes this equation
at 1.37.25 (**vulgate**) : 116
sugar (*śarkara*) *Saccharum officinarum*,
Linn. **NK** : 101
sugar cane (*ikṣu*) *Saccharum officinarum*,
Linn. **NK** : 101
sunflower (*sūryavallī*) → *ādityavallī*,
sūryamukhī, *Helianthus annuus* Linn.

- gvdb** : 114
 swan (*haṃsa*) *haṃsa*. ?. See ? :
 sweet flag (*vacā*) *Acorus calamus* Linn. See **gvdb** : 75, 82
 sweet melon (*ervārūka*) *Cucumis melo*, L. See **avs;avs**, **IGP** 325–6, **NK** (C. momordica) :
 sweet plants (*madhuravarga*) The sweet plants are enumerated at *Suśrutasaṃhitā* 1.42.11. See also **gvdb** : 43
 sweet-scented oleander (*aśvamāra*) *Nerium oleander*, L. See **adps**, **NK** :
 sweet-scented oleander (*aśvamāraka*) *Nerium oleander*, L. See **adps**, **NK** : 104
 teak (*śāka*) *Tectona grandis*, L.f. See **avs**, (**moni-sans**) :
 Tellicherry bark (*kuṭāja*) *Holarrhena pubescens* Wall. ex G.Don, with *Wrightia tinctoria* and *W. arborea* considered **gvdb**, **adps** : 72, 209
 thorn apple (*karambha*) *Datura metel*, L. See **gvdb** for useful discussion. Also, **avs** (cf. *Abhidhānamañjarī*), **NK**, **potter**, **adps**. Possibly the same plant as plumed cockscomb (*indīvara*) (**gvdb**) : 105, 212
 three heating spices (*tryūṣaṇa*) *śuṇṭhī* (Dried ginger) *Zingiber officinale*, Roscoe. **adps**, **NK**, **avs**, **IGP** 1232, pippalī (long pepper) *Piper longum*, L. **adps**, **NK**, and marica (black pepper) *Piper nigrum*, L. **adps**, **NK** : 115
 three-leaved caper (*varuṇa*) *Crataeva magna* (Lour.) DC. See **avs**; cf. **NK** : 100
 top layer of fermented liquor (*surāmaṇḍa*) **imp**, **NK**, **mchu-2021** : 41, 42
 tree cotton (*kārpāsa*) *G. arboreum* L. **adps**. Pace the identifications of **gvdb**, since *G. barbadense* L. is native to South America and *G. herbaceum* L. which is native to Africa : 40, 214
 tree cotton (*picu*) See tree cotton (*kārpāsa*) : 42, 44
 turmeric (*gaūrī*) *Curcuma longa*, L. See **adps**, **avs**, **NK** : 76
 turmeric (*haridrā*) *Curcuma longa* Linn. **gvdb** : 77, 115, 121
 turmeric (*rajanī*) *Curcuma longa*, L. **adps**, **avs**, **NK** : 26, 116
 turpeth (*trivṛt*) → *trvṛtā*. Operculina turpethum (Linn.) Silva Manso = *Ipomoea turpethum* R. Br. **gvdb** : 70, 101, 165, 207
 two kinds of salt (*vasukavasira*) See the discussion by **gvdb**, who note that when *vasuka* is mentioned together with *vasira*, two varieties of salt are often meant (see ??) : 63
 unhusked rice (*śāli*) *Oriza sativa*, Linn. **gvdb** : 26, 213
 various kinds of honey (*madhuvarga*) *Suśrutasaṃhitā*'s eight categories of honey. See *Suśrutasaṃhitā* 1.45.132 and **dutt-1922** :
 velvet-leaf (*pāṭhā*) *Cissampelos pariera*, L. See **adps**, **NK**, **meul-plants1**, **avs**; cf. **avs** : 34, 67, 82, 114
 velvet-mite (*indragopa*) *Kerria lacca* (Kerr.). **lien-1978** : 96
 verbena (*bhārṅgī*) → *phañjī*. *Clerodendrum serratum*, L. See **avs**, **adps** :
 verbena (*phañjī*) *Clerodendrum serratum*, L. See **avs**, **adps** : 99
 'Virāṭa's plant' (*vairāṭaka*) unknown. See ? :
 watered buttermilk (*udaśvit*) **moni-sans** : 97
 watermelon (*kāḷindaka*) *Citrullus lanatus* (Thunb.) Matsum & Nak. See **IGP** 257, **NK**, **avs** :
 weaver's beam tree (*muṣkaka*) *Schrebera swietenoides*, Roxb. See **avs**, Lord, **NK** : 72, 120
 'web-milk' (*jālakṣīri*) unknown. See ? :
 wheat (*godhūma*) *Triticum vulgare*, L. See **HK** :
 white babool (*arimeda*) *Acacia leucophloea*, (Roxb.) Willd. See **avs** : 34

- white calotropis (*alarka*) *Calotropis procera*, (Ait.) R. Br. See **NK, chopra, chop-1958** : 43
- white clitoria (*Xsitā*) → *śvetā*? *Clitoria ternatea*, L. See **avs, NK** :
- white clitoria (*giryāhvā*) → *śvetā*. *Clitoria ternatea*, L. See **avs, NK** :
- white clitoria (*śvetā*) → *giryāhvā*. *Clitoria ternatea*, L. See **avs, NK** : 98
- white cutch tree (*somavalka*) *Acacia polyacantha*, Willd. See **avs, IGP 7, meul-plants1, avs; pace NK** : 99, 120
- white dammer tree (*sarja*) *Vateria indica*, L. See **NK, avs, avs, chopra** : 34
- white siris (*kiñihī*) *Albizia procera*, (Roxb.) Benth. See **gvdb 98, NK** : 115
- white teak (*kāśmarī*) → *madhuparnī*. *Gmelina arborea*, Roxb. See **meul-plants1, bole-1986, adps** : 76, 78
- white water-lily (*kumuda*) *Nymphaea alba*, Linn. **gvdb** : 25
- wild asparagus (*bahuputrā*) → *nandana*? *Asparagus racemosus*, Willd. See further wild asparagus (*śatāvarī*) : 99
- wild asparagus (*śatāvarī*) *Asparagus racemosus*, Willd. See **adps, avs, NK, IGP, avs, dymock** : 74–76, 78, 146, 215
- wild celery (*agnika*) → may be *bhallātaka*, *lāṅgalī*, *ajamodā*, *moraṭa*, or *agnimanthā*, **gvdb**. Uncertain : 114
- wild celery (*ajamodā*) *Apium graveolens*, L. : 114
- wild chinchona (*kādamba*) *Anthocephalus cadamba*, Miq. See **NK** :
- wild mustard (*saurīyaka*) *Cleome viscosa*, L.? (cf. Rā.4.144). See **avs, NK** :
- Withania* (*aśvagandhā*) *Withania somnifera* (L.) Dunal. See **avs, dymock.**, Chevallier 150 : 43, 71, 77
- wolfsbane (*vatsanābha*) *Aconitum napellus*, L. See **avs, NK, potter**. Or *Aconitum chasmanthum* Stapf ex Holmes, **gvdb** : 207
- wood apple (*kapittha*) *Limonia acidissima*, L. See **avs, NK** : 77, 98, 100
- woodrose (*mūṣikakarnī*) *Jatopha curcas*, L. **avs, NK. gvdbadps** discuss this issue well : 98, 99
- woodworm (*ghuṇa*) See [note to Atharvaveda 4.16](#) :
- yellow-berried nightshade (*kṣudrā*) *Solanum virginianum*, L. See **adps, NK, avs** : 115, 116

Glossary

- 'angry beetles' (*toṭaka*): 118
 'bellied' (*kuṣṣita*): 119
 'cook-fish' (*pākamatsya*): 118
 'darts' (*śārikā*): 119
 'earth scorpions' (*viśvambhara*): 119
 'flat insects' (*picciṭā*): 118
 'lids' (*śārava*): 119
 'liquors' (*medaka*): 119
 'orange-dwellers' (*kaṣāyavāsika*): 118
 'pepper snakes' (*sarṣapaka*): 118
 'poisonous snakes' (*pracalāka*): 118
 'pot insects' (*kaunḍinya*): 118
 'speckle-heads' (*citraśīrṣa*): 119
 'wing-scorpions' (*patravṛścika*): 119
 'wood-enemies' (*dārukāri*): 119

 abdominal lump (*gulma*): 160
abhayā (chebolic myrobalan): 143
abhramukta (free from clouds): 150
abhyāṅga (oil massage): 98
abhyāṅga (massage oil): 94, 100
ācāra (regimen): 13
ācārika (medical advice): 42
 accumulation (*sañcaya*): 14
 accumulation (*samudāya*): 39
 aconite (*hālāhala*): 110
ādarśamaṇḍala (the mirror ring): 132
adhikaraṇa (topic): 163f
adhimantha (irritation): 151
adhiṣṭhāna (located): 13
adhiṣṭhāna (carriers): 117
adhiṣṭhāna (base, foundation): 117
ādhmāna (tympanites): 58
ādhmāna (distension): 109
ādhmāta (swollen): 135
adhodṛṣṭitva (downward vision): 151
adhyāya (sections): 16
 affliction (*upasarga*): 100
 afterbirth (*aparā*): 85
agada (antidote): 113
āgantū (external factors): 15
 aggregation (*samuccaya*): 164, 168
agnika (the flame): 132
agra (supernatant layer): 147

agramukta (free from the point): 150
āhāra (diet): 13
āhārya (take away): 40
ahipatāka (the snake flag): 132
ahorātra (day and night): 14
 aids (*aṅga*): 144
aṇagara (the goat swallower): 132
aṇagara (constrictor): 135
ajākṣīrārdita (stirred with goat's milk): 152
ajeya ("invincible"): 116
ajeya (invincible): 101
akhiladehavyāptirūpam (takes the form of pervading the whole body): 111
akriya (inactive): 58
ākṣepa (contractions): 55
ākṣepaka (convulsions): 55
ākṣepaka (convulsion): 56
alagarda (the hungry sting): 131
alagarddā (sting-gush): 23
ālepa (liniment): 141
ālepana (liniments): 23, 100
 alleviated (*yāpya*): 144
 alleviation (*pratikāra*): 14
 along these lines (*evam*): 15
āmālaka (emblic): 142
āmāśaya (stomach): 112f
amra (mango): 142
amṛta (immortal): 101
anāgatāpekṣaṇa (future reference): 163, 167
ānāha (constipation): 109, 112, 116
aṇḍaja (born from eggs): 14
aṇḍīnī (with testicles): 161
anekānta (variable statement): 166
anekānta (variable statement): 163
aṅga (parts): 15
aṅga (aids): 144
aṅgamarda (bruising of the limbs): 112
 anger (*krodha*): 13
aṅgulirāji (the finger stripe): 132
 animals (*paśu*): 14
añjana (application of collyrium): 147

- añjana* (eye ointment): 100
añjana (stibnite): 147
añjana (eye make-up): 99
añjana (application of collyrium): 141
añjana (eye ointment): 100
añjana (eye salve): 114
añjana (eye make-up): 94
annamada (intoxication from food): 112
antarāyāma (emprosthotonos): 56
antidote (*agada*): 113
antra (gut): 113
antra (entrails): 144
ants (*pipilika*): 14
anulepana (massage ointment): 94
anulepana (ointment): 98
anulepana (massage ointment): 98
anumata (consent): 167
anumata (consent): 163
apadeśa (statement of reason): 163
apadeśa (statement of reason): 166
apakṣāṅghāta (paralysis): 56
apāṅga (outer corner of the eye): 149
aparā (afterbirth): 85
apatānaka (spasmodic contraction): 55
āpatantraka (spasmodic contradiction): 56
apavarga (exception): 163, 166
apertures of the head (*kha*): 99
aphorism (*sūtra*): 164
application of collyrium (*añjana*): 141, 147
apuspa (the grass flower): 131
araga timira (non-bloodshot blindness): 148
ardhakaṇṭhasandhika (half door-hinge): 40
ardita (spasm of the jaw-bones): 57
arid-land animals (*jāṅgala*): 147
ariṣṭa (omens): 47
arṇavamala (cuttle fish): 144
arocaka (loss of appetite): 112
arśas (prolapses): 160
ārtava (menstrual blood): 160
arthāpatti (*implication*): 166
arthāpatti (implication): 163
asādhya (untreatable): 149
asādhya (incurable): 141
āsaṅgima (fastening): 40
āsoka (grief): 13
āsoka (asoka tree): 142
asoka tree (*āsoka*): 142
āśrayin (substrate): 13
asthi (bones): 15
aṣṭhīlā (pebble): 96
asūyā (jealousy): 13
atibalā (strong mallow): 145
atideśa (prediction): 163, 166
atikrāntāpekṣaṇa (past reference): 163, 167
ātmaka (nature): 12
āṭopa (flatulence): 97
atyānandā (extremely excited): 161
avadāraṇa (fissuring): 100
avalekhana (combs): 94
āvarta (spiral): 149
avaśardhita (fart): 118
axelwood (*dhava*): 153
ayana (half-year): 14
āyatta (depends on): 13
āyur (life, longevity): 9
āyur (life): 22
āyurveda (the science of life): 10
babhru (the brown): 132
babhrūkuṭīmukha (the brown hut mouth): 131
baddham (bound, connected): 44
balā (country mallow): 145
bala (strength): 13
bali (morsel): 94
base, foundation (*adhiṣṭhāna*): 117
bāṣpa (vapour): 95f, 99
be exhausted (*sāda*): 113
bearers (*voḍhāra*): 94
beauty berry (*priyaṅgu*): 147
beautyberry (*priyaṅgu*): 142
bellyache (*jaṭhara*): 116
bent brow and eye (*vakrabhrūnetra*): 150
benumbed (*jāḍya*): 136
beryl (*vaiḍūrya*): 153
bhadradāru (deodar): 152

- bhakṣya* (masticable): 168
bhaṅga (leaves): 150
bhavet (it may be): 149
bhāvita (infused): 143
bhāvita (cooked): 147
bheṣaja (treatment): 161
bhojya (edible): 168
bhramaraka (drongo): 95
bhṛṅgarāja (racket-tailed drongo): 95
bīja (semen): 160
bile (*pitta*): 144
bilious / *choleric* (*pittalā*): 161
bindurāji (the drop stripe): 132
black (*kṛṣṇā*): 23
black drongo (*dhūmyāṭa*): 95
black part (*kṛṣṇa*): 149
black pepper (*marica*): 142
black soot (*maṣī*): 142
bleeding (*śonita*): 62
blindness (*timira*): 148
blink of the eye (*nimeṣa*): 14
blockage of the vision (*drṣṭyavarodha*): 135
blood (*rakta*): 62
blood (*śonita*): 144
blood (*rudhira*): 14
blood (*śonita*): 61
blood-bile (*śonita-pitta, rakta-pitta*): 144
blood-letting (*sirāvedha*): 142
bloodshot blindness (*rāgin timira*): 146
bloodshot blindness (*rāgiṇi timire*): 148
blue dot cataract (*mlāyin*): 148
blue lotus (*utpala*): 142
blue vitriol (*tuttha*): 146
bodily constituents (*dhātu*): 111
bodily tissues (*dhātu*): 137
body language (*inḡita*): 94
body tissue (*dhātu*): 113
bones (*asthi*): 15
born from eggs (*aṇḍaja*): 14
born in in a caul (*jarāyujā*): 14
born of sweat (*svedaaja*): 14
bound, connected (*baddham*): 44
box myrtle (*kaṭṭphala*): 144
bristles (*śūka*): 118
br̥ṇhaṇa (nourishment): 13
bruising of the limbs (*aṅgamarda*): 112
bubbling (*budbuda*): 151
budbuda (bubbling): 151
bulbs (*kanda*): 14
bull (*vṛṣabha*): 95
burning sensation in feet (*pādadaḥa*): 58
cakradhārā (rim of a wheel): 41
cakraka (the ringed): 132
cala (liquid): 149
can be mitigated (*yāpya*): 148
caraṇī (*caraṇī*): 161
caraṇī (*caraṇī*): 161
cardamom (*elā*): 144
carman (pelt): 14
carnivore (*kravyabhuj*): 145
carriers (*adhiṣṭhāna*): 117
cassia cinnamon (*patra*): 152
castor oil (*pañcāṅgulataila*): 144
cāsyāt (from his mouth): 96
cataract (*liṅganāśa*): 149
caturvarga (fourfold grouping): 15
catuṣṭaya (four factors): 15
caused by wind (*pavanodbhava*): 144
causes (*hetu*): 161
causing a fall (*sraṃsanī*): 161
causing the destruction of actions such as moving (*gamanādikriyāvināśakārī*): 151
caustic (*kṣāra*): 63
chebulic myrobalan (*abhayā*): 143
chedya (excision): 15
cheek-ear (*gaṇḍakarna*): 40
chest (*hṛd*): 113
chidra (opening): 149
child bearing (*kaumārabhṛtya*): 156
child-murderess (*putraghnī*): 161
chinna (segmented): 23
chital deer (*pr̥ṣata*): 95
cholera (*pitta*): 161
chyle (*rasa*): 29
chyle (*rasa*): 112
cihna (signs): 161
circuit of the pupil (*drṣṭimaṇḍala*): 149
citraka (the mark): 132

- citraśīrṣa* ('speckle-heads'): 119
citron (*mātuluṅga*): 151
clean (*pra√sādh*): 100
clusters (*samlava*): 14
cock (*tāmracūḍa*): 146
collection (*varga*): 15
combined (*upahita*): 144
combs (*avalekhana*): 94
comfort (*sukha*): 15
compendium of diseases
 (*rogasaṃgraha*): 158
complexion (*varṇa*): 13, 47
compounds (*yoga*): 142
compressed (*saṃkṣipta*): 41
compressed (*saṃkṣipta*): 40
compulsion (*niyoga*): 164, 167
conch (*salilotthita*): 148
cone snails (*śambūka*): 118
congested humours (*sannipāta*): 15
consent (*anumata*): 163
consent (*anumata*): 167
constipation (*ānāha*): 109, 112, 116
constrictor (*ajagara*): 135
construing (*yoga*): 163
construing (*yoga*): 164
contamination dropsy (*duṣyodara*): 112
contractions (*ākṣepa*): 55
contraposition (*viparyaya*): 163, 166
convulsion (*ākṣepaka*): 56
convulsions (*ākṣepaka*): 55
cooked (*bhāvita*): 147
cooked barley (*yavaudana*): 148
copper (*tāmra*): 151
coral (*vidrūma*): 153
cośa (driness): 151
cottony jujube (*kākolī*): 152
counteraction (*pratīśedha*): 141
country mallow (*balā*): 145
cow snout (*gonasa*): 133
cow's flesh (*gomāṃsa*): 142
cow's urine (*gomūtra*): 143
cow-dung (*gośakṛt*): 142
cow-praising (*govandanā*): 23
crabs (*uccitīṅga*): 119
creeper-ear (*vallīkarṇa*): 40
creepy-crawlies (*sarīsrpa*): 11, 14
crow's foot (*kākapada*): 114
crow's lip (*kākauṣṭha*): 40
cuñcumālaka (little ring of spots): 128
curable (*sādhya*): 141
curds (*dadhi*): 97, 101
cure (*siddhi*): 114
cured (*sādhya*): 116
cuscus grass (*uśīra*): 147
cutting with a blade (*śastrakṣata*): 142
cuttle fish (*aṇṇavamala*): 144
cuttlefish bone (*samudraphena*): 143f
cuttlefish bone (*phena*): 153

dadhi (curds): 97, 101
dadhimukha (the curd mouth): 131
dainya (misery): 13
dais (*pīṭha*): 40
daivakṛte (naturally-occurring): 149
dantamāṃsa (gum): 97
dantaveṣṭa (tooth socket): 97
darbhapuṣpa (the grass flower): 132
darita (torn): 128f
dark colour (*dhyāma*): 110
dart-mouth (*śaṅkumukhī*): 23
dārukāri ('wood-enemies'): 119
dārvī (tree turmeric): 143
datta (given): 95
day and night (*ahorātra*): 14
decoction (*kvātha*): 114
decoctions (*kaṣāya*): 94, 150
decomposition (*kuṇapa*): 61
deducible (*ūhya*): 164, 168
deer (*eṇa*): 145
defects (*doṣa*): 160
delirium (*moha*): 108
demons (*graha*): 156
demons (*graha*): 156
deodar (*bhadradāru*): 152
depends on (*āyatta*): 13
depression (*viśāda*): 13
description (*nirdeśa*): 163, 165
desert date (*īṅgudī*): 147
desire (*icchā*): 13
determination (*nirṇaya*): 163
devadinna (the gift of god): 132

dhātrī (emblic): 143
dhātu (element): 104
dhātu (bodily tissues): 137
dhātu (element): 107
dhātu (bodily constituents): 111
dhātu (element): 109
dhātu (body tissue): 113
dhava (axelwood): 153
dhūma (inhaled smoke): 94
dhūmadarśin (seeing smoke): 141
dhūmyāṭa (black drongo): 95
dhyaṃa (dark colour): 110
dhyaṃa (grimy): 94
diet (*āhāra*): 13
dilator (*pravardhanaka*): 39
dīpyaka (the stimulator): 132
discharge (*praseka*): 110
discharge (*srāva*): 98, 100
disease (*vyadhi*): 15
diseases (*roga*): 160
disjunction (*viśeṣa*): 112
disorders of the female reproductive system (*yonivyāpat*): 160
distension (*ādhmāna*): 109
door-hinge (*kapāṭasandhika*): 40
doṣa (humour): 111, 149, 164
doṣa (humours): 160
doṣa (humours): 14
doṣa (defects): 160
doṣapariplava (unsteadiness of the humours): 151
double (*yamalā*): 97
doubt (*saṃśaya*): 163, 167
downward vision (*adhodṛṣṭitva*): 151
drākṣā (grapes): 152
dravāñjana (liquid collyrium): 146
dravya (substance): 47
dried flesh (*vallūraka*): 40
dried ginger (*nāgara*): 143
driness (*coṣa*): 151
drinkable (*peya*): 168
drongo (*bhramaraka*): 95
drṣṭi (pupil): 141, 150
drṣṭimaṇḍala (circuit of the pupil): 149
drṣṭivibhrama (faulty vision): 99

drṣṭyavarodha (blockage of the vision): 135
dry (*rūkṣa*): 111
dry rub (*utsādana*): 98
dry rubs (*utsādana*): 94
ducts (*sirā*): 15
ducts (*srotas*): 134
duḥkha (suffering): 13
dumb (*mūka*): 58
dung beetles (*varcaḥkṛta*): 118
dūrva (panic grass): 151
dūṣī-viṣa (slow-acting poison): 113
dūṣīviṣa (slow-acting poison): 116
dūṣīviṣāri (slow-acting poison antidote): 97
dūṣīviṣāri (enemy of slow-acting poison): 116
duṣyodara (contamination dropsy): 112
dveṣa (hatred): 13
dvyāhika (the two-day): 132
dvyāṅgulirāji (the two finger stripe): 132
dwindling away (*kṣaya*): 112
ear-ache (*karnaśūla*): 58
earth products (*pārthiva*): 14
earthen products (*pārthiva*): 15
edible (*bhojya*): 168
ekāṅgaroga (monoplegia): 56
ekānta (invariable statement): 166
ekānta (invariable statement): 163
elā (cardamom): 144
element (*dhātu*): 104, 107, 109
elephant/snake (*nāga*): 119
elixir salve (*rasāñjana*): 143, 146f
elixir-salve (*śīta*): 143
elixir-salve (*rasāñjana*): 142
elixir-salve (*śīta*): 143
ellipsis (*vākyaśeṣa*): 163
ellipsis (*vākyaśeṣa*): 166
embelia (*vidariga*): 147
emblic (*dhātrī*): 143
emblic (*āmalaka*): 142
emprosthotos (*antarāyāma*): 56
eṇa (deer): 145
enclosed roasting (*puṭākhyā*): 145
enclosed roasting (*puṭapāka*): 147

- ends (*vaktra*): 151
 enemy of slow-acting poison
 (*dūṣīviṣāri*): 116
 energy (*ojas*): 47
eṇīpada (the deer foot): 132
 entrails (*antra*): 144
 envy (*īrṣyā*): 13
 errhine (*nasya*): 145
 errhines (*nasya*): 100
 essence (*sāra*): 14
evam (along these lines): 15
 exception (*apavarga*): 163, 166
 excision (*chedya*): 15
 expansive (*vikāsin*): 111
 explication (*vyākhyāna*): 163, 167
 expressed juice (*svarasa*): 142
 extensive meaning of the collection of
 statements (*vāksamūhārthavistāra*):
 133
 external factors (*āgantū*): 15
 extract (*niryāsa*): 100
 extract of rohu carp (*rauḥita*): 143
 extracted juice (*svarasa*): 99
 extracts (*rasa*): 147
 extremely excited (*atyānandā*): 161
 eye make-up (*añjana*): 94, 99
 eye ointment (*añjana*): 100
 eye salve (*añjana*): 114
 eyewash (*tarpaṇa*): 100, 142, 146f

 fart (*avaśardhita*): 118
 fastening (*āsaṅgima*): 40
 fat (*vasā*): 146
 faulty medical treatment (*mithyopacāra*):
 160
 faulty vision (*dṛṣṭivibhrama*): 99
 feeling of heat all over (*paridāha*): 136
 female reproductive organ (*yonī*): 160f
 female reproductive system (*yonī*): 160
 field-specific term (*svasaṃjñā*): 164
 field-specific term (*svasaṃjñā*): 167
 filaments (*kiñjalka*): 142
 first point of view (*pūrvapakṣa*): 166
 fissuring (*avadāraṇa*): 100
 flame of the forest (*palāśa*): 147
 flatulence (*āṭopa*): 97

 flavour (*rasa*): 164
 flavours (*rasa*): 13, 47
 flesh (*māṃsa*): 15
 flooded (*pariplutā*): 161
 flowering trees (*vṛkṣa*): 13
 flowers (*puṣpa*): 14
 follicles (*kha*): 98
 fortnight (*pakṣa*): 14
 foul-smelling pus (*pūtipūya*): 62
 four factors (*caturvarga*): 15
 fourfold grouping (*caturvarga*): 15
 free from clouds (*abhramukta*): 150
 free from the point (*agramukta*): 150
 frogs (*maṇḍūka*): 14
 from his mouth (*cāsyāt*): 96
 fruit trees (*vanaspati*): 13
 fruits (*phala*): 14
 future reference (*anāgatāpekṣaṇa*): 163,
 167

 gadgad (stammers): 58
 gāḍha (pinched): 42
 gairika (ochre): 142
 gairikaḥ (red chalk): 151
 gamanādikriyāvināśakarī (causing the
 destruction of actions such as
 moving): 151
 gaṇḍakārṇa (cheek-ear): 40
 garlands (*sraja*): 94
 gauze (*plota*): 42
 gavedhuka (the gavedhuka): 131
 geckos (*grhagoḍikā*): 118
 general rule (*paribhāṣā*): 147
 gently (*mṛdu*): 151
 ghee (*sarpis*): 142
 ghee (*sarpis*): 101
 girisarpa (the mountain snake): 131
 given (*datta*): 95
 giving of fumes (*paridhūpāyana*): 134
 giving off fumes (*paridhūpana*): 134
 glassy opacity (*kāca*): 147
 godhā (monitor lizard): 144
 gold (*śātakumbhī*): 151
 gomāṃsa (cow's flesh): 142
 gomūtra (cow's urine): 143
 gonasa (cow snout): 133

gośakṛt (juice of cow-dung): 142
gośakṛt (cow-dung): 142
govandanā (cow-praising): 23
graha (demons): 156
graha (demons): 156
grahanī (seat of fire in the gut): 136
granthi (knots): 110
granthi (lumps): 61, 98, 109
grapes (*drākṣā*): 152
gr̥dhrasī (sciatica): 57
great aconite (*mahāvīṣa*): 110
great antidote (*mahāgāda*): 23
great fragrance (*mahāsugandha*): 100
great poison (*mahāvīṣa*): 110
greed (*lobha*): 13
green vitriol (*kāsīsa*): 147
gr̥hadhūma (soot): 123
gr̥hagoḍikā (geckos): 118
grief (*āśoka*): 13
grimy (*dhyāma*): 94
gruel (*yavāgū*): 114
guḍikā (pill): 142f
gulma (abdominal lump): 160
gum (*dantamāmsa*): 97
guṇa (qualities): 111
gut (*antra*): 113

haemorrhaging (*śonitāgamana*): 134
hālāhala (aconite): 110
half door-hinge (*ardhakapāṭasandhika*):
 40
half-year (*ayana*): 14
hare foot uraria (*pr̥thakparṇī*): 152
hareṇu (hareṇu): 142
hareṇu (hareṇu): 142f
hareṇu (hareṇu): 142ff
hareṇu (hareṇu): 144
hari (sun): 150
haridrā (turmeric): 147
harṣa (horripilation): 112
harṣa (overexcitement): 13
hastābharaṇaka (the hand decoration):
 132
hatred (*dveṣa*): 13
herbs (*oṣadhi*): 13
hetu (causes): 161

hetvartha (premise): 163
hetvartha (the sense of the cause): 165
himalayan cherry (*padmaka*): 152
hīnakarṇa (reduced-ear): 40
hoarseness (*pāruṣya*): 109
holostemma (*payasyā*): 152
honey (*kṣaudra*): 142
honey (*madhu*): 95
honey (*kṣaudra*): 142
honey (*madhu*): 142
honey (*kṣaudra*): 142
honey collyrium (*kṣaudrāñjana*): 143
horripilation (*harṣa*): 112
horseradish tree (*śigru*): 148
hot all over (*samantatastāpāḥ*): 134
hot over the whole body
 (*sarvāṅgasantāpāḥ*): 134
hr̥d (chest): 113
huge (*mahatī*): 161
human being (*puruṣa*): 12f, 15
humour (*doṣa*): 111, 149, 164
humours (*doṣa*): 14
humours (*doṣa*): 160

icchā (desire): 13
if, then not (*na ced*): 149
ilikinī (the ilikinī): 132
illness (*ruj*): 143
illustration (*nidarśana*): 164, 167
immortal (*amṛta*): 101
implication (*arthāpatti*): 166
implication (*arthāpatti*): 163
impotent (*śaṇḍhī*): 161
in those cases (*tatra*): 144
in yama's direction (*yāmya*): 123
inactive (*akriya*): 58
incurable (*asādhya*): 141
indian lotus (*nalina*): 142
indian madder (*mañjiṣṭhā*): 152
indian sarsaparilla (*śārivā*): 151
indian sarsaparilla (*sāriva*): 143
indian sarsaparilla (*śārivā*): 152
indian sarsaparilla (*kālānusāriva*): 143
indication (*pradeśa*): 163, 166
indigo (*nīlī*): 97
indragopa (red velvet mites): 14

- indrāyudhā* (rainbow): 23
 infertile (*vandhyā*): 161
 inflamed (*saṃrambha*): 42
 inflamed (*vidagdha*): 141
 infused (*bhāvita*): 143
iṅgita (body language): 94
iṅguḍī (desert date): 147
 inhaled smoke (*dhūma*): 94
 inherent (*svābhāvika*): 13
 inherent factors (*svabhāva*): 15
 injured (*utpīḍita*): 148
 inspissation (*rasakriyā*): 147
 intended (*vyākhyāta*): 15
 interpretation (*nirvacana*): 164, 167
 intestines (*pakvādhāna*): 113
 intestines (*pakvāsaya*): 96, 112
 intoxication from food (*annamada*): 112
 invariable statement (*ekānta*): 163
 invariable statement (*ekānta*): 166
 invincible (*ajeya*): 101
 irregularities (*vaiṣamya*): 13
 irrigated (*pratipūraṇa*): 99
 irrigation (*seka*): 141
 irrigation (*tarpaṇa*): 160
 irritation (*prakopa*): 14
 irritation (*adhimantha*): 151
īrṣyā (envy): 13
 it may be (*bhavet*): 149
 itemization (*vidhāna*): 163
 itemization (*vidhāna*): 167
 items created by time (*kālakṛta*): 14f

jāḍya (benumbed): 136
jala (water): 22
jalaaukas (water-dwellers): 22
jambu (*jambū*): 142
jambū (jambu): 142
jāṅgala (arid-land animals): 147
jaṅgama (mobile): 104
jaṅgama (moving): 13, 15
jarāyujja (born in in a caul): 14
jaṭhara (bellyache): 116
jātī (royal jasmine): 153
 jealousy (*asūyā*): 13
 joints (*sandhi*): 15
 juice extract (*svarasa*): 14
 juice of cow-dung (*gośakṛt*): 142
 juices (*rasa*): 146
jyotīratha (the chariot of light): 133

kāca (glassy opacity): 147
kākapada (crow's foot): 114
kākauṣṭha (crow's lip): 40
kākolī (cottony jujube): 152
kalā (layers of skin): 137
kalā (minutes): 14
kālakṛta (items created by time): 14f
kālānusāriṇa (indian sarsaparilla): 143
kalāyakhañja (lathyrism): 57
kalka (mash): 116
kalpa (procedure): 126
kalpa (rule): 117
kāma (lust): 13
kaṇabha (wasps): 119
kanda (bulbs): 14
kaṇṭaka (spots): 99
kapālacūrṇa (powdered earthenware
 crockery): 41
kapāṭasandhika (door-hinge): 40
kapha (phlegm): 113
kapha (mucus): 99
kapha (phlegm): 109, 112, 136, 161
kapilā (tawny): 23
kapittha (wood apple): 142
kapittha (wood apple): 142
karburā (mottled): 23
kardama (the mud): 132
karma (regimen): 150
karman (therapies): 15
karṇaśūla (ear-ache): 58
karṇavyadha (piercing the ear): 37
karṇinī (protuberant): 161
kārśmarī (white teak): 143
kaṣāya (decoctions): 94, 150
kaṣāya (the ochre): 132
kaṣāyavāsika ('orange-dwellers'): 118
kāśīpati (lord of kāśī): 93
kāśīsa (green vitriol): 147
kāṣṭhā (trice): 14
kaṭphala (box myrtle): 144
kaumārabhṛtya (child bearing): 156
kaunḍinya ('pot insects'): 118

- kavala* (mouthwash): 98
kha (follicles): 98
kha (apertures of the head): 99
khaluṣa (the khaluṣa): 132
khaṇḍaphaṇa (the break hood): 131
khañja (limpness): 57
khara (rough): 151
kikkisāda (the worm eater): 132
kinihī (white siris): 147
kiñjalka (filaments): 142
kitchen (*mahānasa*): 93
kiṭīpa (lice): 118
knots (*granthi*): 110
knowledge (*veda*): 9
kohl (*srotas*): 146
kohl (*srotoja*): 143, 153
koṣṭha (trunk of the body): 135
koṣṭukaśīrṣa (synovitis of knee join): 57
koṭha (skin disease): 112
kravyabhuj (carnivore): 145
kṛcchra (with difficulty): 148
kriyā (procedures): 12
kriyā (treatment): 15
kriyā (procedures): 12
kriyā (treatment): 147
kriyā (procedures): 15
kriyā (treatment): 147
kriyākāla (the time for therapies): 15
kriyāsaṅga (loss of function): 151
kṛmi (worms): 14
krodha (anger): 13
kṛṣṇā (long pepper): 142
kṛṣṇā (black): 23
kṛṣṇa (black part): 149
kṛṣṇasarpa (the black snake): 130
kṛṣṇodara (the black belly): 130
kṣaṇadāndhya (night blindness): 143
kṣāra (caustic): 63
kṣāraka (lye): 146
kṣaudra (honey): 142
kṣaudrāñjana (honey collyrium): 143
kṣaya (dwindling away): 112
kṣīṇa (wasted): 42
kṣīṇa (low volume): 61
kṣīra (milky sap): 104, 107, 109
kṣīra (sap): 14
kṣīrikāpuṣpa (the milk flower): 132
kukṣita ('bellied'): 119
kūkuṭa (the kūkuṭa): 131
kuṇapa (decomposition): 61
kunta (small insects): 14
kupyaka (metal): 142
kuśa (kuśa grass): 146
kuśa grass (*kuśa*): 146
kuṣṭha (pallid skin disease): 113
kvātha (decoction): 114
lac (*lākṣā*): 152
lākṣā (lac): 152
lame (*paṅgu*): 57
lathyrism (*kalāyakhāñja*): 57
layer (*paṭala*): 148
layers of skin (*kalā*): 137
leaves (*bhaṅga*): 150
leaves (*patra*): 14
lehya (suckable): 168
lekhana (scarification): 13
lice (*kiṭīpa*): 118
life (*āyur*): 22
life, longevity (*āyur*): 9
limpid (*viśada*): 111
limpness (*khañja*): 57
liṅga (symptoms): 112
liṅga (symptom): 99
liṅganāśa (cataract): 149
liniment (*ālepa*): 141
liniments (*ālepana*): 23, 100
liquid (*cala*): 149
liquid collyrium (*dravāñjana*): 146
liquorice (*madhuka*): 143
liquorice (*madhukair*): 152
little ring of spots (*cuñcumālaka*): 128
liver (*yakṛt*): 143f
liver extract (*yakṛdrasa*): 143
lobha (greed): 13
located (*adhiṣṭhāna*): 13
lodh tree (*lodhra*): 143, 147
lodhra (lodh tree): 143, 147
logical methods of the system
 (*tantrayukti*): 163
lohitākṣa (the red eye): 131f

- long pepper (*māgadhi*): 144, 146
 long pepper (*māgadha*): 147
 long pepper (*pippali*): 142
 long pepper (*māgadhi*): 144
 long pepper (*kr̥ṣṇā*): 142
 loose stool (*viḍbheda*): 109, 120
 lord of kāśī (*kāśīpati*): 93
 loss of appetite (*arocaka*): 112
 loss of function (*kriyāsaṅga*): 151
 lotus-mouth (*puṇḍarikamukhī*): 24
 lotus-splittable (*utpalabhedyaka*): 40
 lotus-spots (*padminīkaṇṭaka*): 99
 low volume (*kṣīṇa*): 61
 lumps (*granthi*): 61, 98, 109
 lust (*kāma*): 13
 lūtā (spiders): 11
 lye (*kṣāraka*): 146

madanaka (the intoxicator): 132
madhu (honey): 142
madhūka (mahua): 146ff
madhuka (liquorice): 143
madhūka (mahua): 146
madhukair (liquorice): 152
madhus (honey): 95
madirā (spirits): 143
madira (spirits): 147
māgadha (long pepper): 147
māgadhi (long pepper): 144
māgadhi (long pepper): 144, 146
mahāgada (great antidote): 23
mahākapota (the big pigeon): 130
mahākṛṣṇa (the big black): 130
mahānasa (kitchen): 93
mahāpadma (the great lotus): 131
mahāpanasaka (the big jackfruit): 132
mahāsarpa (the great snake): 131
mahāśīrṣa (the big head): 131
mahāsugandha (great fragrance): 100
mahatī (huge): 161
mahāviṣa (great poison): 110
mahāviṣa (great aconite): 110
mahua (*madhūka*): 146ff
mākuli (*mākuli*): 133
mākuli (*mākuli*): 133
mākuli (*mākuli*): 133

mākuli (*mākuli*): 133
 malice (*mātsarya*): 13
māṃsa (flesh): 15
māṃsanirgama (prolapse): 151
manaḥśilā (red arsenic): 143
manaḥśilā (realgar): 143, 153
manaḥśilā (red arsenic): 142
manaḥśilā (realgar): 146f
mānasa (mental): 13
maṇḍala (round blotches): 112
maṇḍūka (frogs): 14
 mango (*amra*): 142
mañjiṣṭhā (indian madder): 152
 manyāstambha (stiffness of the neck): 136
 manyāsthambha (rigidity of neck): 57
marica (black pepper): 142
markaṭa (monkey): 110
 marks with a knife (*śastrapada*): 26
māsa (month): 14
 mash (*kalka*): 116
maṣī (black soot): 142
 massage oil (*abhyāṅga*): 94, 100
 massage ointment (*anulepana*): 94, 98
 masticable (*bhakṣya*): 168
mātsarya (malice): 13
mātuluṅga (citron): 151
 matured (*vipakva*): 142
medaka ('liquors'): 119
 medical advice (*ācārīka*): 42
 medicines cooked in a crucible
 (*puṭapāka*): 142
 men (*nara*): 118
 menstrual blood (*ārtava*): 160
 mental (*mānasa*): 13
 mention (*samuddeśa*): 163, 165
meṣaśrīṅga (periploca of the woods): 152
meṣaviṣāṇa (periploca of the woods):
 145
 metal (*kupyaka*): 142
 metamorphopsia (*viparītadarśana*): 134
 milk (*payas*): 101
 milky sap (*kṣīra*): 104, 107, 109
mimmira (mumbles): 58
 minutes (*kalā*): 14
 misery (*dainya*): 13

- miśrakacikitsa* (various treatments): 43
misshapen eyeball (vilocana): 150
mithuna (triad): 167
mithuna (pair): 167
mithyopacāra (faulty medical treatment): 160
mitigatable (yāpya): 141
mlāyīn (blue dot cataract): 148
mobile (jaṅgama): 104
moha (delirium): 108
monitor lizard (godhā): 144
monkey (vānara): 118
monkey (markaṭa): 110
monoplegia (ekāṅgaroga): 56
month (māsa): 14
morsel (bali): 94
mottled (karburā): 23
mouse (mūṣikā): 23
mouthwash (kavala): 98
moving (jaṅgama): 13, 15
mṛḍu (gently): 151
mucous (śleṣman): 136
mucus (kapha): 99
muhūrta (three-quarters of an hour): 14
mūka (dumb): 58
mukhasaṃdamśā (nipping with the mouth): 118
muktā (pearl): 149
muktavā (separate): 149
mūla (roots): 14
mūla (root): 13
mūlaka (mūlaka): 110
mūlaka (mūlaka): 110
multi-joins (vyāyojima): 40
mumbles (mimmira): 58
mūrcchā (stupor): 96
mūṣika (rodents): 11
mūṣikā (mouse): 23
mustā (nutgrass): 152
mustaka (mustaka): 110
mustaka (mustaka): 110
myrobalan (pathyā): 142
na ced (if, then not): 149
naḍīja (salt): 143
nāga (elephant/snake): 119
nāgara (dried ginger): 143
nalada (spikenard): 147
nalina (indian lotus): 142
nara (men): 118
nasal medicine (nasya): 114
nasal medicines (nasya): 141
nasya (errhine): 145
nasya (errhines): 100
nasya (nasal medicines): 141
nasya (snuff): 94
nasya (nasal medicine): 114
nasya (snuff): 99
naturally-occurring (daivakṛte): 149
nature (ātmaka): 12
needle (sūcī): 150
nemīsandhānaka (rim-join): 41
nemīsandhānaka (rim-join): 40
nidarśana (illustration): 164, 167
night blindness (kṣaṇadāndhya): 143
niḥkvātha (stewed juice): 114
nīlī (indigo): 97
nimeṣa (blink of the eye): 14
nipping with the mouth (mukhasaṃdamśā): 118
nirdeśa (description): 163, 165
nirṇaya (determination): 163
nirvacana (interpretation): 164, 167
nirvedhima (ready-split): 40
nirviṣa (without venom): 128
niryāsa (extract): 100
niryāsa (resin): 14, 104, 106, 109
niśācara (nocturnal creature): 147
niṣevita (used): 144
niṣevita (prepared): 146
nivāta (no wind): 14
niyoga (compulsion): 164, 167
no wind (nivāta): 14
nocturnal creature (niśācara): 147
non-bloodshot blindness (araga timira): 148
non-flowering tree (vanaspati): 147
nourishment (bṛṃhaṇa): 13
numbness (svāpa): 100
nutgrass (mustā): 152
objection (pūrvapakṣa): 163

- oceanic (*sāmudrikā*): 23
 ochre (*gairika*): 142
 off his hand (*sapāṇa*): 145
 oil (*sneha*): 14
 oil massage (*abhyāṅga*): 98
 oil stripe (*snigdharāji*): 133
 oily stripe (*snigdharāji*): 133
 ointment (*pralepa*): 96, 99
 ointment (*anulepana*): 98
 ojas (vital energy): 13
 ojas (energy): 47
 omens (*ariṣṭa*): 47
 opening (*chidra*): 149
 ophidian (*sarpita*): 128
 option (*vikalpa*): 164, 168
 or not distorted (*vāvikṛtā*): 97
 oṣadhi (remedies): 15
 oṣadhi (herbs): 13
 oṣadhī- (remedies): 13
 outer corner of the eye (*apāṅga*): 149
 overexcitement (*harṣa*): 13

 pacification (*saṁśamana*): 13
 pacification (*upaśama*): 14
 pādādāha (burning sensation in feet): 58
 padārtha (word meaning): 163
 padārtha (word-meaning): 164
 padma (the lotus): 131
 padmaka (himalayan cherry): 152
 padminikaṇṭaka (lotus-spots): 99
 pain (*śūla*): 113
 pain and injury (*vedanābhighāta*): 10
 pair (*mithuna*): 167
 pāka (sepsis): 100
 pākamatsya ('cook-fish'): 118
 pakṣa (fortnight): 14
 pakṣāghāta (paralysis): 56
 pakvādhāna (intestines): 113
 pakvāśaya (intestines): 96, 112
 palāśa (flame of the forest): 147
 pālindaka (the morning glory): 132
 pallava (shoots): 150
 pallid skin disease (*kuṣṭha*): 113
 panasaka (the jackfruit): 132
 pañcāṅgulatāila (castor oil): 144
 paṅgu (lame): 57

 panic grass (*dūrvā*): 151
 paralysis (*pakṣāghāta*): 56
 paralysis (*apakṣāghāta*): 56
 paralysis of arms and back (*viśvañci*): 57
 pārāvata (the pigeon): 132
 paribhāṣā (general rule): 147
 paridāha (feeling of heat all over): 136
 paridhūpana (giving off fumes): 134
 paridhūpāyana (giving of fumes): 134
 paripltā (flooded): 161
 parisarpa (the snake around): 131
 parīṣeka (shower): 98
 parśvabheda (ribs crack): 113
 pārthiva (earth products): 14
 pārthiva (earthen products): 15
 partial blindness (*timira*): 144f
 particulars (*vikalpa*): 15
 parts (*aṅga*): 15
 pārūṣya (hoarseness): 109
 past reference (*atikrāntāpekṣaṇa*): 163, 167
 paśu (animals): 14
 paṭala (layer): 148
 pāthā (velvet leaf): 147
 pathyā (myrobalan): 142
 patra (leaves): 14
 patra (cassia cinnamon): 152
 patravṛścika ('wing-scorpions'): 119
 pavanodbhava (caused by wind): 144
 payas (milk): 101
 payasyā (holostemma): 152
 pearl (*muktā*): 149
 pebble (*aṣṭhīlā*): 96
 pelt (*carman*): 14
 periploca of the woods (*meṣaviśāṇa*): 145
 periploca of the woods (*meṣaśṛṅga*): 152
 person (*puruṣa*): 167
 pervasive (*vyavāyīn*): 111
 peya (drinkable): 168
 phala (fruits): 14
 phena (cuttlefish bone): 153
 phlegm (*kapha*): 109, 112f, 136, 161
 phlegmatic (*śleṣmalā*): 161
 physical (*śārīravāda*): 15

- picciṭā* ('flat insects'): 118
pīḍ- (press): 149
 piercing (*vyadha*): 150
 piercing the ear (*karnavyadha*): 37
 pigs' eye (*sūkarākṣitā*): 151
pilindaka (the pilindaka): 132
 pill (*guḍikā*): 142f
 pinched (*gāḍha*): 42
piṅgalā (ruddy): 23
pipīlika (ants): 14
pippali (long pepper): 142
 pith (*sāra*): 104, 106, 109
pīṭha (dais): 40
pitta (choler): 161
pitta (bile): 144
pittalā (bilious / choleric): 161
plīhan (spleen): 144
plota (gauze): 42
plutā (sprung): 161
 poṭa throat (*poṭagala*): 133
poṭagala (poṭa throat): 133
 powdered earthenware crockery
 (*kapālacūrṇa*): 41
pra√sādh (clean): 100
pra√kuth (rot): 97
prabha (shine): 149
pracalāka ('poisonous snakes'): 118
 practical purposes (*prayojanavat*): 14
pradeśa (indication): 163, 166
pragāḍha (steeped): 145
prakopa (irritation): 14
prakṛti (temperament): 13
pralāpa (ranting): 108
pralepa (ointment): 96, 99
prasaṅga (recontextualization): 166
prasaṅga (recontextualization): 163
praseka (discharge): 110
pratīkāra (alleviation): 14
pratīkāra (remedy): 141
pratipūraṇa (irrigated): 99
pratisāraṇa (rub): 97
pratisāraṇa (rubbing): 97
pratiṣedha (counteraction): 141
pravardhanaka (dilator): 39
prayojanavat (practical purposes): 14
 prediction (*atideśa*): 163, 166
 premise (*hetvārtha*): 163
 premiss (*sādhana*): 165
 prepared (*niṣevita*): 146
 prepared with tilvaka (*tailvaka*): 142
 prepared with turpeth (*traivṛta*): 142
 prescription (*upadeśa*): 163
 prescription (*upadeśa*): 165
 press (*pīḍ-*): 149
priyaṃgu (beautyberry): 142
priyaṅgu (beauty berry): 147
 probe (*śalākā*): 149f
 procedure (*kalpa*): 126
 procedures (*kriyā*): 12, 15
 prolapse (*māṃsanirgama*): 151
 prolapses (*arśas*): 160
 protuberant (*karnīnī*): 161
prṣata (the speckled): 132
prṣata (chital deer): 95
prthakparṇī (hare foot uraria): 152
 pulse interval (*vegāntara*): 137
puṇḍarīka (the lotus): 132
puṇḍarīka (*puṇḍarīka*): 110
puṇḍarīka (*puṇḍarīka*): 110
puṇḍarīkamukha (the lotus mouth): 131
puṇḍarīkamukhī (lotus-mouth): 24
 pupil (*drṣṭi*): 141, 150
 purification (*saṃśodhana*): 13
puruṣa (human being): 13, 15
puruṣa (person): 167
puruṣa (human being): 12
pūroapakṣa (objection): 163
pūroapakṣa (first point of view): 166
puṣpa (flowers): 14
puṣpābhikīrṇnābha (the flower sprinkle
 beauty): 131
puṣpapāṇḍu (the pale as a flower): 132
puṣpasakalī (the flower all): 132
puṭāhvaya (taken hot): 146
puṭākhyā (enclosed roasting): 145
puṭapāka (roasting): 160
puṭapāka (medicines cooked in a
 crucible): 142
puṭapāka (enclosed roasting): 147
pūtipūya (foul-smelling pus): 62

pūtipūya (stinking pus): 61
putraghnī (child-murderess): 161

qualities (*guṇa*): 111

racket-tailed drongo (*bhṛṅgarāja*): 95
rāgin timira (bloodshot blindness): 146
rāgiṇi timire (bloodshot blindness): 148
rainbow (*indrāyudhā*): 23
rainy seasons (*varṣā*): 14
rajana (turmeric): 143
rājicitra (the stripe speckle): 132
rājimat (striped snake): 114
rakta (blood): 62
raktakṣayā (with bloodloss): 161
raktamaṇḍala (the red ring): 132
ranting (*pralāpa*): 108
rarified (*sūkṣma*): 111
rasa (flavours): 47
rasa (the blood of birds and animals):
143
rasa (chyle): 112
rasa (flavour): 164
rasa (flavours): 13
rasa (extracts): 147
rasa (juices): 146
rasa (chyle): 29
rasakriyā (inspissation): 147
rasāñjana (elixir salve): 147
rasāñjana (elixir-salve): 142
rasāñjana (elixir salve): 143, 146f
rauhita (extract of rohu carp): 143
ready-split (*nirvedhima*): 40
realgar (*maṇḥśilā*): 143, 146f, 153
recontextualization (*prasaṅga*): 163
recontextualization (*prasaṅga*): 166
red arsenic (*maṇḥśilā*): 142f
red chalk (*gairikaḥ*): 151
red velvet mites (*indragopa*): 14
reduced-ear (*hīnakarṇa*): 40
regimen (*karma*): 150
regimen (*ācāra*): 13
remedies (*oṣadhi*): 15
remedies (*oṣadhī*): 13
remedy (*pratīkāra*): 141
resin (*niryāsa*): 14, 104, 106, 109

restrictions (*yantraṇā*): 150
retas (semen): 61
rheum (*upadeha*): 99
ribs crack (*parśvabheda*): 113
rigid (*sthirā*): 151
rigidity of neck (*manyāsthambha*): 57
rim of a wheel (*cakradhārā*): 41
rim-join (*nemīsandhānaka*): 40
rim-join (*nemīsandhānaka*): 41
ṛjusarpa (the straight snake): 131
roasting (*puṭapāka*): 160
rodents (*mūṣika*): 11
roga (diseases): 160
rogasaṃgraha (compendium of
diseases): 158
rohita (rohita tree): 147
rohita tree (*rohita*): 147
root (*mūla*): 13
roots (*mūla*): 14
rot (*pra√kuth*): 97
rough (*khara*): 151
round blotches (*maṇḍala*): 112
royal jasmine (*jātī*): 153
ṛtu (season): 14
rub (*pratisāraṇa*): 97
rubbing (*pratisāraṇa*): 97
ruddy (*piṅgalā*): 23
rudhira (blood): 14
ruj (illness): 143
rūkṣa (dry): 111
rule (*kalpa*): 117

sāda (be exhausted): 113
ṣaḍaṅga (the six part): 132
sādhana (premiss): 165
sādhya (cured): 116
sādhya (curable): 141
saindhava (salt): 114
saindhava (sindh salt): 146
saindhava (sind salt): 142f
sal tree (*śālā*): 142
śālā (sal tree): 142
śālākā (probe): 149f
salilotthita (water-born): 148
salilotthita (conch): 148
saliva (*śleṣman*): 96

- śīta* (elixir-salve): 143
sitā (white sugar): 152
śīta (elixir-salve): 143
 skin (*tvak*): 14f
 skin disease (*koṭha*): 112
 sleep (*svāpa*): 109
śleṣmalā (phlegmatic): 161
śleṣman (saliva): 96
śleṣman (mucous): 136
 slice of flesh (*vadhra*): 44f
 slow-acting poison (*dūṣṭviṣa*): 116
 slow-acting poison (*dūṣṭ-viṣa*): 113
 slow-acting poison antidote (*dūṣṭviṣāri*):
 97
 small insects (*kunta*): 14
snāyu (sinews): 15
sneha (oil): 14
 sniffing (*ucchingana*): 149
snigdharāji (oily stripe): 133
snigdharāji (oil stripe): 133
 snuff (*nasya*): 99
snuff (nasya): 94
 sole-heart (*talahrdaya*): 167
 solid (*styāna*): 149
 soma creeper (*somalatā*): 96
somalatā (soma creeper): 96
śonita (bleeding): 62
śonita (blood): 61
śonita (bleeding): 62
śonita (blood): 61
śonita (blood): 144
śonita-pitta, rakta-pitta (blood-bile): 144
śonitāgamana (haemorrhaging): 134
śonitena (with blood): 150
 soot (*gr̥hadhūma*): 123
 spasm of the jaw-bones (*ardita*): 57
 spasmodic contraction (*apatānaka*): 55
 spasmodic contradiction (*āpatantraka*):
 56
 sperm (*śukra*): 61
sphoṭa (spots): 99f
 spiders (*lūtā*): 11
 spike (*śalya*): 165
 spikenard (*nalada*): 147
 spiral (*āvarta*): 149
 spirits (*madira*): 147
 spirits (*madirā*): 143
 spleen (*plīhan*): 144
 splinter (*śalya*): 166
 spots (*kaṇṭaka*): 99
 spots (*sphoṭa*): 99f
 sprung (*plutā*): 161
sraja (garlands): 94
sraṃsanī (causing a fall): 161
srāva (discharge): 98, 100
śreyas (welfare): 10
srotas (kohl): 146
srotas (ducts): 134
srotas (tubes): 136
srotoja (kohl): 143, 153
 stalk (*vr̥nta*): 142
 stammers (*gadgad*): 58
 statement of reason (*apadeśa*): 163
 statement of reason (*apadeśa*): 166
 stationary (*sthāvara*): 13, 15, 104
 steeped (*pragāḍha*): 145
 stewed juice (*niḥkvātha*): 114
sthāvara (stationary): 13, 15, 104
sthirā (rigid): 151
 stibnite (*sauvīraka*): 143
 stibnite (*añjana*): 147
 stick-ear (*yaṣṭīkarna*): 40
 stiffness of the neck (manyāstambha): 136
 sting-gush (*alagarddā*): 23
 stings (*śūla*): 119
 stinking pus (*pūtipūya*): 61
 stirred with goat's milk (*ajākṣīrārdita*):
 152
 stomach (*āmāśaya*): 112f
 strength (*bala*): 13
 striped snake (*rājimat*): 114
 strong mallow (*atibalā*): 145
 stupor (*mūrcchā*): 96
styāna (solid): 149
 substance (*dravya*): 47
 substrate (*āśrayin*): 13
 successive shocks (*vega*): 127
sūcī (needle): 150
sūcīvaktrā (with a needle-like opening):
 161

suckable (*lehya*): 168
 suffering (*duḥkha*): 13
sugandhi (sandal): 145
śūka (bristles): 118
śukapatra (the white leaf): 132
sūkarākṣitā (pigs' eye): 151
sukha (comfort): 15
śukra (sperm): 61
sūkṣma (rarified): 111
śūla (shooting pain): 151
śūla (pain): 113
śūla (stings): 119
 sun (*hari*): 150
 supernatant layer (*agra*): 147
sūtra (aphorism): 164
svabhāva (inherent factors): 15
svābhāvika (inherent): 13
svāpa (sleep): 109
svāpa (numbness): 100
svarasa (juice extract): 14
svarasa (extracted juice): 99
svarasa (expressed juice): 142
śvāsa (wheezing): 109
svasamjñā (field-specific term): 167
svasamjñā (field-specific term): 164
svayamgupta (velvet bean): 142
svedaja (born of sweat): 14
śvetadara (the white rip): 131
śvetahanu (the white jaw): 132
śvetakapota (the white pigeon): 131
śvetamaṇḍala (the white ring): 132
 swollen (*ādhmāta*): 135
syanda (watery eye): 148
 symptom (*liṅga*): 99
 symptoms (*liṅga*): 112
 synovitis of knee join (*koṣṭukaśīrṣa*): 57
tailasugandhi (the fragrant one in oil):
 145
tailvaka (prepared with tilvaka): 142
 take away (*āhārya*): 40
 taken hot (*puṭāhvaya*): 146
 takes the form of pervading the whole
 body (*akhiladehavyāptirūpam*): 111
talahr̥daya (sole-heart): 167
tālīśa (scramberry): 142

tālīśapatra (scramberry): 143
tāmra (copper): 151
tāmracūḍa (cock): 146
tantrayukti (logical methods of the
 system): 163
tantuka (the stretch): 132
tarpaṇa (eyewash): 100, 142, 146f
tarpaṇa (irrigation): 160
tatra (the tatra): 132
tatra (in those cases): 144
 tawny (*kapilā*): 23
 temperament (*prakṛti*): 13
 the all black (*sarvakṛṣṇa*): 130
 the bamboo leaf (*venupatraka*): 132
 the big black (*mahākṛṣṇa*): 130
 the big cow snout (*vṛddhagonasa*): 132
 the big head (*mahāśīrṣa*): 131
 the big jackfruit (*mahāpanasaka*): 132
 the big pigeon (*mahākapota*): 130
 the black belly (*kṛṣṇodara*): 130
 the black snake (*kṛṣṇasarpa*): 130
 the blood of birds and animals (*rasa*):
 143
 the break hood (*khaṇḍaphaṇa*): 131
 the brown (*babhru*): 132
 the brown hut mouth
 (*babhrūkuṭīmukha*): 131
 the chariot of light (*vyōtīratha*): 133
 the conch keeper (*śaṁkhaṇḍa*): 131
 the curd mouth (*dadhimukha*): 131
 the deer foot (*eṇīpada*): 132
 the drop stripe (*bindurāji*): 132
 the finger stripe (*aṅgulirāji*): 132
 the flame (*agnika*): 132
 the flower all (*puṣpasakalī*): 132
 the flower sprinkle beauty
 (*puṣpābhikīrṇābha*): 131
the fragrant one in oil (tailasugandhi):
 145
 the gavedhuka (*gavedhuka*): 131
 the gift of god (*devadinna*): 132
 the goat swallower (*ajagara*): 132
 the grass drier (*tṛṇaśoṣaka*): 132
 the grass flower (*darbhapuṣpa*): 132
 the grass flower (*apuṣpa*): 131

- the great lotus (*mahāpadma*): 131
 the great snake (*mahāsarpa*): 131
 the hand decoration (*hastābharana*): 132
 the hungry sting (*alagarda*): 131
 the ilikinī (*ilikinī*): 132
 the intoxicator (*madanaka*): 132
 the jackfruit (*panasaka*): 132
 the khaluṣa (*khaluṣa*): 132
 the kid (*śiśuka*): 132
 the kūkuṭa (*kūkuṭa*): 131
 the little tree (*vrkṣaka*): 133
 the lotus (*puṇḍarika*): 132
 the lotus (*padma*): 131
 the lotus mouth (*puṇḍarīkamukha*): 131
 the mark (*citraka*): 132
 the milk flower (*kṣīrikāpuṣpa*): 132
 the mirror ring (*ādarśamaṇḍala*): 132
 the morning glory (*pāṇḍarika*): 132
 the mountain snake (*girisarpa*): 131
 the mud (*kardama*): 132
 the ochre (*kaṣāya*): 132
 the pale as a flower (*puṣpapāṇḍu*): 132
 the pigeon (*pārāvata*): 132
 the pilindaka (*pilindaka*): 132
 the rain cloud (*valāhako*): 131f
 the red eye (*lohitākṣa*): 131f
 the red ring (*raktamaṇḍala*): 132
 the ringed (*cakraka*): 132
 the science of life (*āyurveda*): 10
 the sense of the cause (*hetvārtha*): 165
 the six part (*ṣaḍaṅga*): 132
 the snake around (*parisarpa*): 131
 the speckled (*pṛṣata*): 132
 the stimulator (*dīpyaka*): 132
 the straight snake (*rjusarpa*): 131
 the stretch (*tantuka*): 132
 the stripe speckle (*rājicitra*): 132
 the tatra (*tatra*): 132
 the three fruits (*triphala*): 147
 the three spices (*vyoṣa*): 143
 the time for therapies (*kriyākāla*): 15
 the two finger stripe (*dvyāṅgulirāji*): 132
 the two-day (*dvyāhika*): 132
 the variegated (*vicitra*): 131
 the white jaw (*svetahanu*): 132
 the white leaf (*śukapatra*): 132
 the white pigeon (*śvetakapota*): 131
 the white ring (*śvetamaṇḍala*): 132
 the white rip (*śvetadara*): 131
 the worm eater (*kikkisāda*): 132
 the year-snake (*varṣāhika*): 132
 thei snake flag (*ahipatāka*): 132
 therapies (*karman*): 15
 three fruits (*triphala*): 142f
 three-quarters of an hour (*muhūrta*): 14
 timira (partial blindness): 144
 timira (blindness): 148
 timira (partial blindness): 145
 tooth socket (*dantaveṣṭa*): 97
 topic (*adhikaraṇa*): 163f
 torn (*darita*): 128f
 toṭaka ('angry beetles'): 118
 toxic impulses (*viśavega*): 135
 toxic pulse (*vega*): 137
 traivṛta (prepared with turpeth): 142
 treatable (*yāpya*): 116
 treatment (*kriyā*): 15, 147
 treatment (*bheṣaja*): 161
 tree turmeric (*dārvī*): 143
 triad (*mithuna*): 167
 trice (*kāṣṭhā*): 14
 triphala (three fruits): 143
 triphala (the three fruits): 147
 triphala (three fruits): 142
 trivṛt (turpeth): 145
 tṛṇaśoṣaka (the grass drier): 132
 trunk of the body (*koṣṭha*): 135
 tubes (*srotas*): 136
 turmeric (*haridrā*): 147
 turmeric (*rajana*): 143
 turpeth (*trivṛt*): 145
 tuttha (blue vitriol): 146
 tvak (skin): 14f
 tympanites (*ādhmāna*): 58
 ucchiṅgana (sniffing): 149
 uccīṅga (crabs): 119
 udāvartā (*udāvartā*): 161
 udāvartā (*udāvartā*): 161
 udbhid (shoots): 14

udveṣṭana (writhing): 108
ūhya (deducible): 164, 168
 unsteadiness of the humours
 (*doṣapariplava*): 151
 untreatable (*asādhya*): 149
upadeha (rheum): 99
upadeśa (prescription): 163
upadeśa (prescription): 165
upadrava (side-effects): 100, 116
upahita (combined): 144
upaśama (pacification): 14
upasarga (affliction): 100
 used (*niṣevita*): 144
uśīra (cuscus grass): 147
utpala (blue lotus): 142
utpalabhedyaka (lotus-splittable): 40
utpīḍita (injured): 148
utsādana (dry rub): 98
utsādana (dry rubs): 94

vadhra (slice of flesh): 44f
vaidūrya (beryl): 153
vaiṣaṃya (irregularities): 13
vakrabhrūnetra (bent brow and eye): 150
vāksamūhārthavistāra (extensive meaning
 of the collection of statements): 133
vaktra (ends): 151
vākyaśeṣa (ellipsis): 163
vākyaśeṣa (ellipsis): 166
valāhako (the rain cloud): 131f
vallīkarṇa (creeper-ear): 40
vallūra (dried flesh): 40
vāminī (vomiting): 161
vānara (monkey): 118
vanaspati (fruit trees): 13
vanaspati (non-flowering tree): 147
vandhyā (infertile): 161
vapour (*bāṣpa*): 95f, 99
varaki (wasps): 119
varcaḥkīṭa (dung beetles): 118
varga (collection): 15
 variable statement (*anekānta*): 166
 variable statement (*anekānta*): 163
 various treatments (*miśrakacikitsa*): 43
varṇa (complexion): 13, 47
varṣā (rainy seasons): 14

varṣāhika (the year-snake): 132
vartti (wicks): 153
vartti (wick): 39
vasā (fat): 146
vāta (wind): 160f
vātalā (windy): 161
vāvikṛtā (or not distorted): 97
veda (knowledge): 9
vedanābhighāta (pain and injury): 10
vega (successive shocks): 127
vega (toxic pulse): 137
vegāntara (pulse interval): 137
 velvet bean (*svayamgupta*): 142
 velvet leaf (*pāthā*): 147
venupatraka (the bamboo leaf): 132
vicitra (the variegated): 131
vidagdha (inflamed): 141
vidaṅga (embelia): 147
viḍbheda (loose stool): 109, 120
vidhāna (itemization): 167
vidhāna (itemization): 163
vidruma (coral): 153
vikalpa (particulars): 15
vikalpa (option): 164, 168
vikāsin (expansive): 111
vilocana (misshapen eyeball): 150
vipakva (matured): 142
viparītadarśana (metamorphopsia): 134
viparyaya (contraposition): 163, 166
vīrudh (shrubs): 13
viśāda (depression): 13
viśada (limpid): 111
viśavega (toxic impulses): 135
viśleṣa (disjunction): 112
viśvambhara ('earth scorpions'): 119
viśvañci (paralysis of arms and back): 57
 vital energy (*ojas*): 13
voḍhāra (bearers): 94
 vomiting (*vāminī*): 161
vr̥ddhagonasa (the big cow snout): 132
vr̥kṣa (flowering trees): 13
vr̥kṣaka (the little tree): 133
vr̥nta (stalk): 142
vr̥ṣabha (bull): 95
vyadha (piercing): 150

- vyadhi* (disease): 15
vyākhyāna (explication): 163, 167
vyākhyāta (intended): 15
vyāla (wild animals): 14
vyāna (vyāna breath): 136
vyāna breath (*vyāna*): 136
vyāvāyin (pervasive): 111
vyāyojima (multi-joins): 40
vyoṣa (the three spices): 143
- wasps (*kaṇabha*): 119
 wasps (*varaki*): 119
 wasted (*kṣīṇa*): 42
 water (*jala*): 22
 water-born (*salilotthita*): 148
 water-dwellers (*jalaukas*): 22
 watery eye (*syanda*): 148
 welfare (*śreyas*): 10
 wheezing (*śvāsa*): 109
 white mustard (*siddhārthaka*): 151
 white siris (*kinihī*): 147
 white sugar (*sitā*): 152
 white teak (*kārśmarī*): 143
 wick (*vartti*): 39
 wicks (*vartti*): 153
 wild animals (*vyāla*): 14
 wind (*vāta*): 160f
 windy (*vātalā*): 161
 with a needle-like opening (*sūcīvaktrā*): 161
 with blood (*śonitena*): 150
 with bloodloss (*raktakṣayā*): 161
 with difficulty (*kṛcchra*): 148
 with testicles (*aṇḍīnī*): 161
 without venom (*nirviṣa*): 128
- womb (*yonī*): 156
 wood apple (*kapittha*): 142
 wood apple (*kapittha*): 142
 word meaning (*padārtha*): 163
 word-meaning (*padārtha*): 164
 worms (*kṛmi*): 14
 writhing (*udveṣṭana*): 108
- yakṛdrasa* (liver extract): 143
yakṛt (liver): 143f
yamalā (double): 97
yāmya (in yama's direction): 123
yantraṇā (restrictions): 150
yāpya (treatable): 116
yāpya (alleviated): 144
yāpya (can be mitigated): 148
yāpya (mitigatable): 141
yaṣṭīkarṇa (stick-ear): 40
yavāgū (gruel): 114
yavaudana (cooked barley): 148
 year (*saṃvatsara*): 14
yoga (construing): 164
yoga (compounds): 142
yoga (construing): 163
yonī (female reproductive system): 160
yonī (womb): 156
yonī (female reproductive organ): 160
yonī (female reproductive system): 160
yonī (female reproductive organ): 161
yonivyāpat (disorders of the female reproductive system): 160
yuga (yuga): 14
yuga (*yuga*): 14
 "invincible" (*ajeya*): 116

Todo list

■ Can't be "sedation"	35
■ JG in the light of your reflections, I removed "women's fertile". I've put śārīram back in.	61
■ JG could you provide a standard citation reference for this information?	61
■ I have replaced the plant-names with entries from my plant database.	63
■ This is a change we should make in the edition.	67
■ You need not give all the grammatical details about śrotādi. Assume you are talking to knowledgeable Sanskrit scholars.	68
■ Perhaps <i>kalka</i> here could also mean the <i>Terminalia Bellerica</i> (विभीतक).	70
■ Euphorbia Antiquorum (Antique spurge)	72
■ The webpage https://hindi.shabd.in/vairagya-shatakam-bhagacharya-arjun-tiwari/post/117629 says that this verse belongs to the <i>Nītiratna</i> . I could not find this text.	75
■ The provisional edition should be modified accordingly.	77
■ There, Ḍalhaṇa comments that deliberation on <i>avapīḍa</i> had been done earlier when it was mentioned. Find that description to know more details.	79
■ Search for the section where the treatment of <i>ākṣepaka</i> is described.	80
■ Make the first letter of sentence capital.	80
■ ?	86
■ ?	86
■ ?	86
■ (?)	86
■ Cf. Arthaśāstra 1.21.8.	94
■ I'm still unhappy about this verse.	97

■ Mention this in the introduction as an example of the scribe knowing the vulgate.	97
■ fn about sadyas+	97
■ Bear's bile instead of deer's bile.	98
■ punarṇavā in the N & K MSS	99
■ śrita for śṛta	99
■ explain more	99
■ Medical difference from Sharma.	100
■ example where the vulgate clarifies that these should be used separately; appears to be a gloss inserted into the vulgate text. . . .	100
■ The two uses of prāpta are hard to translate. prāptāḥ → kṣipram is an example of the vulgate banalizing the Sanskrit text to make sense of a difficult passage.	100
■ √ vyadh not √ vedh (also elsewhere and for the ears), causative optative.	100
■ -> ativiṣa	110
■ Look up the ca. reference.	110
■ Come back to the issue of "kalpa". Look up passages in the Kośa. . . .	117
■ write footnote: don't repeat ativiṣā; vulgate similar to H.	121
■ material corresponds to SS.1.45.205ab, where it describes how alcohol affects the body.	124
■ Or "There are 20 phaṇins and 6 maṇḍalins. The same number are known. There are 13 Rājīmats." Or even, "there are 20 Phaṇins and six of them are Maṇḍalins." Are phaṇins really the same as darvīkaras?	128
■ grammar	129
■ ri- ṛ-?	131
■ varṇa means "colour" elsewhere?	133
■ where is cutting with a knife related to removing bile or phlegm. . . .	142
■ maṣi burned charcoal. Find refs.	142
■ find ref.	147
■ Check out these refs.	148
■ meaning of kalpa	148
■ or a dual?	153
■ Footnote here about who is speaking to whom.	143
■ a kind of asthma?	149
■ Not happy with the last part.	149
■ connecting with the previous pāda?	149

■ (atyartha? excessive?)	150
■ for...dvādaśādhikāḥ)? not clear to me, is it dvādaśādhikāḥ?	150
■ (any better medical terms for them?)	150
■ (since the word lagha is not clear to me)	151
■ (Not too happy with it.)	151
■ (not sure about it)	151
■ (Not in vulgate)	151
■ (I am looking for a better translation)	151
■ (I'd need to rework on it).	152
■ (I'd need to rework on it and think about the sequencing of the number).	152
■ (āmadoṣa? Not too sure)	152
■ (2nd hemistich is incomplete)	152
■ (not too sure about the meaning of vyapada)	152
■ not so sure about sodāvarte	152
■ not so sure about it, MW mentions others like Cordia Myxa and Alangium hexapetalum	153
■ not sure about it	153
■ (sāmāhāya- any better word?)	153
■ Not so happy with this translation	154
■ (Not happy with it)	155
■ (the second hemistich is incomplete)	155
■ can śṛta mean here boiled milk? Not happy with the last part . . .	155
■ the rest of the text is unclear to me	155
■ (not so sure about it). [ghṛtābhyaṅgonavasthāsu should it be like ghṛtābhyaṅgo 'navasthāsu?, svedā lepaḥ ghṛtābhyaṅgonavas- thāsu ca yojayet] (Not so happy with the translation)	156
■ See also Ḍalhaṇa at 1.1.1 (vulgate)	165
■ See chapter 40 of Sūtrasthāna.	166
■ vasā / medas / majjan	167
■ Does bhūtādi a compound or it means ahaṅkāra or ego?	167

